

BASIC HINDI I



Rajiv Ranjan
Michigan State University

Basic Hindi I (Ranjan)

This text is disseminated via the Open Education Resource (OER) LibreTexts Project (<https://LibreTexts.org>) and like the thousands of other texts available within this powerful platform, it is freely available for reading, printing, and "consuming."

The LibreTexts mission is to bring together students, faculty, and scholars in a collaborative effort to provide an accessible, and comprehensive platform that empowers our community to develop, curate, adapt, and adopt openly licensed resources and technologies; through these efforts we can reduce the financial burden borne from traditional educational resource costs, ensuring education is more accessible for students and communities worldwide.

Most, but not all, pages in the library have licenses that may allow individuals to make changes, save, and print this book. Carefully consult the applicable license(s) before pursuing such effects. Instructors can adopt existing LibreTexts texts or Remix them to quickly build course-specific resources to meet the needs of their students. Unlike traditional textbooks, LibreTexts' web based origins allow powerful integration of advanced features and new technologies to support learning.



LibreTexts is the adaptable, user-friendly non-profit open education resource platform that educators trust for creating, customizing, and sharing accessible, interactive textbooks, adaptive homework, and ancillary materials. We collaborate with individuals and organizations to champion open education initiatives, support institutional publishing programs, drive curriculum development projects, and more.

The LibreTexts libraries are Powered by [NICE CXone Expert](#) and were supported by the Department of Education Open Textbook Pilot Project, the California Education Learning Lab, the UC Davis Office of the Provost, the UC Davis Library, the California State University Affordable Learning Solutions Program, and Merlot. This material is based upon work supported by the National Science Foundation under Grant No. 1246120, 1525057, and 1413739.

Any opinions, findings, and conclusions or recommendations expressed in this material are those of the author(s) and do not necessarily reflect the views of the National Science Foundation nor the US Department of Education.

Have questions or comments? For information about adoptions or adaptations contact info@LibreTexts.org or visit our main website at <https://LibreTexts.org>.

The LibreTexts name, logo, and book covers are trademarked by LibreTexts, Inc. (a 501(c)(3) not-for-profit organization) and protected against unauthorized use.

This text was compiled on 09/01/2026

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Licensing

1: Hindi Letters and Script

- 1.1: हिंदी स्वर्ण वर्ण "Hindi Vowel Letters"
- 1.2: हिंदी व्यंजन वर्ण "Hindi Consonant Letters"
- 1.3: Dependent Vowels, and Vowel-Consonant Conjugation
- 1.4: Nasal Sounds in Hindi
- 1.5: Persian-Arabic Borrowed Letters
- 1.6: Common Hindi Words and Phrases
- 1.7: Extra/Optional online Materials

2: Beginning Conversations

- 2.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 1
- 2.2: Greetings and Introductions
- 2.3: Informal Conversations
- 2.4: Formal Conversations
- 2.5: Study Abroad
- 2.6: Grammar- Gender and Number
- 2.7: Personal Pronouns with Verb "To be"
- 2.8: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

3: परिवार "Family"

- 3.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 2
- 3.2: Reading/Listening 1- मेरा परिवार
- 3.3: Reading/Listening 2- विद्या का परिवार
- 3.4: Study Abroad
- 3.5: Grammar of Adjectives
- 3.6: Apostrophe "S" ('s) in Hindi
- 3.7: Degree of Adjectives
- 3.8: "Wh-" Question/Interrogative Sentence
- 3.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

4: Describing Places

- 4.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 3
- 4.2: Reading/Listening 1- ऋतिक का घर
- 4.3: Reading/Listening 2- ऋतिक का कमरा
- 4.4: Reading/Listening 2- पीटर का शहर
- 4.5: Study Abroad
- 4.6: Post-positions
- 4.7: Oblique Case

4.8: "There" Construction

4.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

5: Expressing Likes, Dislikes, Needs, and Possession

5.1: Review of Chapter 4

5.2: Reading/Listening 1- फल और सब्ज़ी की दुकान पर

5.3: Reading/Listening 2- भोजनालय में

5.4: Study Abroad

5.5: Verb "To be" in the Past Tense

5.6: Subject with को

5.7: चाहिए "Need"

5.8: Expressing Possession in Hindi

5.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

6: Giving Instruction and Making Request

6.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

6.2: Review of Chapter 5

6.3: Reading/Listening 1- मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की विधि

6.4: Reading/Listening 2- रास्ता बताना

6.5: Reading/Listening 3- सोशल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना

6.6: Study Abroad

6.7: Verbs

6.8: Imperative Construction

6.9: Object with को and से

6.10: Expressing Obligation and Suggestions

7: Expressing Present, Past, and Future Actions

7.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

7.2: Review of Chapter 6

7.3: Reading/Listening 1- दिनचर्या

7.4: Reading/Listening 2- मेरे शौक

7.5: Reading/Listening 3- त्योहार

7.6: Study Abroad

7.7: Grammar- Tense and Aspect

7.8: Grammar- The present and past habitual tense

7.9: The Present and Past Progressive Tense

7.10: Grammar- Simple Future Tense

8: Talking About the Past and Completed Actions

8.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

8.2: Review of Chapter 7

8.3: Reading/Listening 1- छुट्टियों के बाद

- 8.4: Reading/Listening 2- पत्र लेखन
- 8.5: Reading/Listening 3- शुभकामनाएँ
- 8.6: Study Abroad
- 8.7: Grammar- Perfective Aspect
- 8.8: Grammar- कर Construction
- 8.9: Conjunct Verb
- 8.10: Subjunctive

Index

Glossary

Detailed Licensing

Licensing

A detailed breakdown of this resource's licensing can be found in **Back Matter/Detailed Licensing**.

1: HINDI LETTERS AND SCRIPT

- 1.1: हिंदी स्वर्ण वर्ण "Hindi Vowel Letters"
- 1.2: हिंदी व्यंजन वर्ण "Hindi Consonant Letters"
- 1.3: Dependent Vowels, and Vowel-Consonant Conjugation
- 1.4: Nasal Sounds in Hindi
- 1.5: Persian-Arabic Borrowed Letters
- 1.6: Common Hindi Words and Phrases
- 1.7: Extra/Optional online Materials

1.1: हिंदी स्वर्ण वर्ण "Hindi Vowel Letters"

Please watch this video of vowel letters with examples. While you are watching you can pause the video and try to say each vowel letter and examples out loud.

Instructor Video: [Vowel letters with examples](#)

How to Write Vowel Letters

Please watch the following video to learn how to write vowel letters. Please pause the video and practice writing these vowel letters.

Instructor Video: [How to write vowel letters](#)

Table 1. Hindi Vowel Letters “हिन्दी स्वर्ण वर्ण”

Table 1: List of Hindi vowel letters with their English equivalent sounds.

Hindi	अ	आ	इ	ई	उ
English	a	aa	i	ii	u
Hindi	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
English	oo	e	ai	o	au
Hindi		अं	अः	ऋ	
English		un	uh	Ri	

Table 2. Examples of Vowel letters in English and Hindi words.

Table 2 (above). List of vowel letters with examples in English and Hindi words.

Vowel Letters	English Examples	Hindi Examples
---------------	------------------	----------------

अ	ABOUT, AGAIN	अनार
आ	ARM, CAR	आम
इ	PIN, KIN	इमली
ई	PEEL, FEEL	ईख
उ	PUT, BULL	उल्लू
ऊ	SCHOOL, POOL	ऊन
ए	PEN, DEN	एक
ऐ	PAN, VAN	ऐनक
ओ	POST, MOST	ओखली
औ	CAUGHT, BOUGHT	औरत
अं	UNDER, UNDO	अंडा
अः	RAMA, SHIVA	दुःख, अंततः
ऋ	KRISHNA, KRISHI	ऋषि

Worksheet 1. Please practice writing vowel letters now

Worksheet 1. Hindi language learners can download the worksheet below to practice writing vowel letters.

[Worksheet 1 PDF](#)

Test yourself

Activity 1:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=672>

Activity 2:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=672>

Please record your vowel sounds here and share it with your friends/teacher for further feedback.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=672>

धन्यवाद !

1.2: हिंदी व्यंजन वर्ण "Hindi Consonant Letters"

Please watch the following video of Hindi consonant letters. While watching the video, you can pause and try to say each letter out loud.

Instructor Video: [Hindi Consonant Letters](#)

Writing Consonant Letters

Please watch the following video and try to learn how to write consonant letters.

Instructor Video: [Writing Consonants](#)

Table 4. List of Consonant Letter with their English equivalent sounds.

Table 4 (above). Hindi consonant letters with their English equivalent and their place and manner of articulations.

	Place of Articulation	Unvoiced Unaspirated	Unvoiced Aspirated	Voiced Unaspirated	Voiced Aspirated	Nasal
Hindi	Velar	क	ख	ग	घ	ङ
English		ka	kha	ga	gha	nga
Hindi	Palatal	च	छ	ज	झ	ञ
English		cha	chha	ja	jha	nja
Hindi	Retroflex	ट	ठ	ड/ड़	ढ/ढ़	ण
English		Ta	Tha	Da/Ra	Dha/Rha	Na

Hindi	Dental	त	थ	द	ध	न
English		ta	tha	da	dha	na
Hindi	Labial	प	फ	ब	भ	म
English		pa	pha	ba	bha	ma
Hindi	Semi-vowels	य	र	ल	व	
English		ya	ra	la	va/wa	
Hindi	Sibilants	स	श	ष		
English		sa	sha	shha		
Hindi	Glotal	ह				
English		ha				
Hindi	Clusters	क्ष	त्र	ज्ञ		
English		ksha	tra	jna		

Table 5. Examples of Hindi Consonants in English and Hindi words

Table 5 (above). Examples of consonant letters in Hindi and English words.

Consonants	English	Hindi	Notes
क	SKILL, STICK	कलम, कपड़ा	
ख		खरगोश, खरा	“ख” is pronounced as “क,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ग	GUN, GOAL	गमला, गड़बड़	
घ		घर, घड़ी	“घ” is pronounced as “ग,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ङ		गंगा, कंघी	Velar nasal does not explicitly appear in a word. It comes as a dot (.) above the letter to show nasalization.
च	PITCH, SWITCH	चरखा, चरित्र	
छ		छत, छड़ी	“छ” is pronounced as “च,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).

ज	JUG, JOKE	जग, जटिल	
झ		झरना, झगड़ा	“झ” is pronounced as “ज,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ञ		पंजाब, पंच	Palatal nasal does not explicitly appear in a word. It comes as a dot (.) above the letter to show nasalization.
ट	BAT, CAT	टमाटर, टमटम	
ठ		ठेरा, ठग	“ठ” is pronounced as “ट,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ड	BAD, CARD	डमरू, डब्बा	
ढ		ढक्कन, ढहना	“ढ” is pronounced as “ड,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ण		ठंडा, अंडा	Retroflex nasal does not explicitly appear in a word. It comes as a dot (.) above the letter to show nasalization.

त		तरबूज, तनाव	“त” is pronounced as “ट,” with the tongue at dental position.
थ		थरमस, थकना	“थ” is pronounced as “त,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
द	THE, THEN	दवा, दरवाज़ा	
ध		धन, धनुष	“ध” is pronounced as “द,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
न	NO, NEAR	नल, नहाना	
प	NAP, SLEEP	पतंग, पलंग	
फ		फल, फटना	“फ” is pronounced as “प,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
ब	TUB, PUB	बकरी, बदन	

भ		भलाई, भरोसा	“भ” is pronounced as “ब,” but with aspiration (extra puff of air).
म	MOM, MONEY	मछली, ममता	
य	YELLOW, YES	यज्ञ, यश	
र	REST, RIVER	रस्सी, रचना	
ल	LAMP, LARGE	लट्ठ, लड़का	
व	WAY, WINE	वर्दी, वकील	Hindi has only “व” for English “W,” and “V.”
स	SUN, SERVICE	सब्ज़ी, सड़क	
श	SHOE, SHINE	शलगम, शत	

ष		षट्भुज, षड्यंत्र	“ष” is pronounced as “श,” with the tongue at retroflex position.
ह	HINDI, HUB	हरा, हरिन	
क्ष		क्षत्रिय, वृक्ष	“क्ष” is a borrowed letter from Sanskrit. It does not have English equivalent.
त्र		पत्र, पात्र	“त्र” is a borrowed letter from Sanskrit. It does not have English equivalent.
ज्ञ		यज्ञ,	“ज्ञ” is a borrowed letter from Sanskrit. It does not have English equivalent.

Worksheet 2. Please practice writing these consonant letters

Worksheet 2. Hindi language learners can download the worksheet below to practice writing consonant letters.

[Worksheet 2 PDF](#)

Test Yourself

Activity 1: Match the followings

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=674>

Activity 2: Choose the correct option.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=674>

Activity 3:

Please record your consonant sounds here and share it with your friends/teacher for further feedback.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=674>

Reading and Writing Task

You should try to read the words in Worksheet 3 (below). You can write them down in Roman script then watch the following video and check your answer.

Worksheet 3 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 5 (below).

जल	नल	सच	झट	रथ
फल	हल	मत	पर	घर
डर	बस	कह	चख	कर
मत	हर	अब	पढ़	यम
कलम	कमल	खरब	कलश	महल
बतख	मदन	पलक	नहर	भजन
शहद	शहर	सड़क	मगर	चरण
पकड़	इधर	ऊपर	गरम	परत

कसरत	अजगर	दशरथ	शरबत	टमटम
बरगद	नटखट	उबटन	परवल	पनघट
चमचम	लगभग	करवट	जगमग	हलचल

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 3](#)

Half Consonants

Unlike English, Hindi has half consonants (consonant without vowel). In Hindi, half consonants are used to form consonant clusters in words.

Please watch the following video to learn how to write half consonant.

Instructor Video: [Half Consonants](#)

Place of articulation	Unvoiced unaspirated	Unvoiced aspirated	Voiced unaspirated	Voiced aspirated	Nasal
Velar	क/क	ख/ख	ग/ग	घ/घ	ङ
Palatal	च/च	छ/छ	ज/ज	झ/झ	ञ
Retrolingual	ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
Dental	त/त	थ/थ	द	ध/ध	न
Labial	प/प	फ/फ	ब/ब	भ/भ	म
Semi-vowel	य/य	र/र	ल/ल	व/व	श/श
Sibilants	स/स	ह/ह	ष/ष		
Glabial	ह/ह				

Picture 1. Handwritten half consonant in both styles.

क/क	ख/ख	ग/ग	घ/घ	ङ
च/च	छ/छ	ज/ज	झ/झ	ञ
ट	ठ	ड	ढ	ण
त/त	थ/थ	द	ध/ध	न
प/प	फ/फ	ब/ब	भ/भ	म
य/य	र/र	ल/ल	व/व	श/श
	ह/ह	ष/ष	ह/ह	

Picture 2. Typed half consonants in Hindi

Half “र” (R)

Half “र” when it comes in a consonant cluster, it is written in two ways.

- (a) When half “र” comes after another consonant, it is marked as a diagonal stroke at the bottom of the letter going from right top to the left bottom.

For example:

प्र	प्रेम	Prem
क्र	क्रम	kram
ग्र	ग्राहक	graahak

- (b) When “र” come before another consonant, it is marked on the top of another consonant as a “रेफ” reph.

For example:

र्ष	सर्प	sarp
र्य	आर्य	aary
र्षा	वर्षा (if there is a long vowel, reph goes on the top of the long vowel)	warshhaa

धन्यवाद !

1.3: Dependent Vowels, and Vowel-Consonant Conjugation

Dependent Vowels

Vowels in Hindi can be written independently (we learned this in the last part) and dependently. When we write a word we need to conjugate consonant with vowel letter. In order to write that consonant and vowel clusters, we need to use dependent vowel marking attached with consonant. Here is a list of dependent vowel markers.

Table 6 (above). List of independent and dependent vowels in Hindi.

Independent	अ	आ	इ	ई	उ
Dependent	ॊ	ा	ि	ी	ु
Independent	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
Dependent	ू	े	ै	ो	ौ
Independent		अं	अः	ऋ	
Dependent		ं	ः	ृ	

Dependent Vowel Letters with Consonant Letters

Please watch the following video to learn how dependent vowels conjugate with consonant letters. Table 7 also shows examples of how half consonants are conjugating with dependent vowels.

Instructor Video: [Dependent vowel and consonant conjugation](#)

Table 7 (above). Examples of conjugations of vowel and consonant letters.

		Half consonants							
		क्	ग्	त्	द्	प्	व्	स्	ह्
Independent	Dependent	Conjugated consonant letters							
Vowels	Vowels								

अ	ॐ	क	ग	त	द	प	व	स	ह
आ	ा	का	गा	ता	दा	पा	वा	सा	हा
इ	ि	कि	गि	ति	दि	पि	वि	सि	हि
ई	ी	की	गी	ती	दी	पी	वी	सी	ही
उ	ु	कु	गु	तु	दु	पु	वु	सु	हु
ऊ	ू	कू	गू	तू	दू	पू	वू	सू	हू
ए	े	के	गे	ते	दे	पे	वे	से	हे
ऐ	ै	कै	गै	तै	दै	पै	वै	सै	है
ओ	ो	को	गो	तो	दो	पो	वो	सो	हो
औ	ौ	कौ	गौ	तौ	दौ	पौ	वौ	सौ	हौ
अं	ं	कं	गं	तं	दं	पं	वं	सं	हं
अः	ः	कः	गः	तः	दः	पः	वः	सः	x
ऋ	ृ	कृ	गृ	तृ	दृ	पृ	वृ	सृ	हृ

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/l151/?p=681>

Reading and Writing Task

Please try to read the words in Worksheet 4 (below). You can write them down in Roman script then watch the video and check your answer.

Worksheet 4 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 8 (below).

काका	काला	काकी	कोख	घी
गमला	कुछ	चाचा	झकाझक	चखो
कई	आग	कोई	कौआ	अचूक
जाओ	आओ	टोपी	डाकू	ढीली
बगीचा	माता	थोड़ा	लड़का	लड़की
कठिनाई	किताब	देवनागरी	बारिश	शाबाश
सिलाई	ऋण	कृपया	भाषण	पृथ्वी
प्रकाश	कार्य	प्रगति	ग्राहक	वर्तमान
कुर्सी	चक्र	नम्रता	पर्व	मर्द

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 4](#)

Consonants Cluster/Conjunct Consonants

Similar Consonants Cluster

In Hindi, similar consonants can come together in a word. They are pronounced as a lengthened consonants.

For example:

पक्का	बच्चा	कुत्ता
pakkaa	bachchaa	kuttaa

Different Consonants Cluster

In Hindi, different consonants can come together in a word. For pronunciation, one should start with the place of articulation of the first consonant, but move the tongue position to the second consonant before releasing the air.

For example:

सत्य	प्यार	त्वचा
saty	pyaar	twachaa

Dependent Vowel-Consonants Cluster Conjugation

When the dependent vowels come together with the consonant clusters, the dependent vowels are marked at the second consonant in a consonant cluster.

Exception the short “i” [इ/ि] marker, the short “i” marker comes before the half/first consonant in a consonant cluster.

For example:

आ	इ	ई	उ	ऊ	ए	ऐ	ओ	औ
ा	ि	ी	ु	ू	े	ै	ो	ौ
क्या	शक्ति	पत्नी	च्युत	न्यूनतम	क्लेश	द्वैत	त्योहार	प्रौढ़
kyaa	shakti	patnii	chyut	nyoonatam	klesh	dvait	tyohaar	prauRh

Test Yourself

Reading and Writing Task

Please try to read the words in Worksheet 5 (below). You can write them down in Roman script then watch the video and check your answer.

Worksheet 5 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 9 (below).

मुख्य	सत्य	मक्खन	क्लास	ग्लास
बच्चा	ग्रहण	मट्टा	ज्ञान	ज्यादा
मध्य	विद्या	त्वचा	वत्स	न्याय
स्वाद	शक्ति	प्यार	स्तम्भ	कक्षा
स्तब्ध	वात्सल्य	भक्ति	वृद्ध	पृष्ठ

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 5](#)

धन्यवाद !

1.4: Nasal Sounds in Hindi

Nasal Sounds Video

Instructor Video: [Nasal Sounds](#)

Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ)

In Hindi script, nasalization is marked by a superscript “bindu/anusvaar” (ँ). “Bindu/anusvaar” represents the nasal sounds for all the consonant categories (velar, palatal, retroflex, dental, and labial). To identify the correct category of the nasal sound marked by a “bindu/anusvaar,” one has to look at the next letter. The “bindu/anusvaar” belongs to the category of the next consonant letter.

Table 8 (below). List of nasal sounds with examples in Hindi words.

Table 8 (above). List of nasal sounds with examples in Hindi words.

Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) represents	Examples		
Velar Nasal ङ	अंक	गंगा	कंगन
Palatal Nasal ञ	पंजाब	अंचल	पंचायत
Retroflex Nasal ण	अंडा	कंठ	पंडित
Dental Nasal न	अंत	हिंदी	अंधा
Labial Nasal म	कंबल	चंपा	लंबा
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before य and व represents preceding vowel nasalization.	संयम	संवाद	संवरण
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before र, ल, and स represents dental nasal	संसार	संरक्षण	
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before श represents palatal nasal	अंश	दंश	मंशा
Bindu/Anusvaar (ँ) before ह represents velar nasal	सिंह		

Chandrabinu (ँ)

Chandrabinu (ँ) is used to indicate the vowel nasalization.

For example: अँधा, हँ, बाँध।

Sometimes, when a vowel markings in a word does not allow the space because of the superscript then instead of chandrabinu (ँ), bindu (ँ) is used.

For example: मैं, सिंचाई, में

In typing, it is very common to see the use of bindu (ँ) instead of chandrabinu (ँ) in modern Hindi script.

Test yourself

Reading/Writing Task

Worksheet 6 (below). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video (below).

Worksheet 6 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video (below).

कंघी	कंगाल	कंचन	बंधन	जंगल
टंकण	चंदन	छंद	बूंद	आँख
चंदा	आँसू	अँग्रेज़ी	कथा	धंधा

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 6](#)

धन्यवाद !

1.5: Persian-Arabic Borrowed Letters

Table 9. List of Persian and Arabic borrowed letters in Hindi

Table 9. List of Persian and Arabic borrowed letters in Hindi.

Letter	Roman	Examples
क़	qa	क़ब्र, क़ानून
ख़	Kha	ख़त, ख़ुदा
ग़	Ga	ग़ैर, ग़ालिब
ज़	za	बाज़ार, वज़ीर
फ़	fa	फ़र्क़, फ़र्श

Test Yourself

Reading and Writing Task

Worksheet 7. Please read the following words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using the video (below).

Worksheet 7 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using video 11 (below).

प्याज़	लिफ़ाफ़ा	चीज़	मेज़	खास
ख़ूबसूरत	ख़तरनाक	ज़मीन	ज़ंजीर	हफ़्ता
काराज़	ज़िद	बाग़	शौक़	ख़ुश
अंग्रेज़ी	काफ़ी	माफ़	साफ़	क़ाबिल

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 7](#)

Overall Learning

The following words need your overall learning of the Hindi script in this chapter. Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using the video below.

Worksheet 8 (above). Reading and Writing: Please read these words and try to write them in Roman script and then check your answer using the video below.

कृष्णा	ऊँचा	गूँगा	हिन्दी	उर्दू
चिट्ठी	ज़मीनदार	ऋतु	विशेषण	पृथ्वी

मित्र	राष्ट्र	क्रियान्वयन	खर्चा	आर्थिक
ऋतिक	द्वितीय	युद्ध	उत्तीर्ण	लक्षण
जॉर्ज वाशिंगटन	न्यु यॉर्क	नसीरुद्दीन शाह	फ़रवरी	कक्षा

Instructor Video: [Feedback on Worksheet 8](#)

धन्यवाद !

1.6: Common Hindi Words and Phrases

Table of Common Hindi Words & Phrases

Hindi	Transliteration	English
नमस्ते	<i>namaste</i>	Hello/Bye
हाँ	<i>haan</i>	Yes
नहीं	<i>nahin</i>	No
अच्छा	<i>achchhaa</i>	Good
खराब	<i>Kharaab</i>	Bad
ठीक	<i>Thiik</i>	Alright
क्या	<i>kyaa</i>	What
कब	<i>kab</i>	When
कहाँ	<i>kahaan</i>	Where
धन्यवाद	<i>dhnyawaad</i>	Thanks
कृपया	kRipyaa	Please
हिंदी में बोलिये	Hindi me boliye	Please speak in Hindi.
यह क्या है?	<i>ye kyaa hai</i>	What is this?
यह कौन है?	<i>ye kaun hai</i>	Who is s/he?
x कहाँ है?	<i>X kahaan hai?</i>	Where is X

फिर से बोलिये	<i>phir se boliye</i>	Please say again
क्या हाल है?	<i>kyaa haal hai</i>	How are you?
मुझे x चाहिये	<i>mujhe X chaahiye</i>	I need X
क्या चल रहा है?	<i>kyaa chal rahaa hai</i>	What is going on?
x कितने का है?	<i>X kitne kaa hai</i>	How much does X cost?
ज़रा/थोड़ा धीरे बोलिये	<i>Zaraa/ThoRaa dhiire boliye</i>	Please speak slowly.
अन्दर आइये	<i>andar aaiye</i>	Please come in
बाहर जाइए	<i>bahar jaaiye</i>	Please go out.
क्या आप समझ रहे/रही हैं?	<i>kyaa aap samajh rahe/rahii hain?</i>	Do you understand?
मुझे समझ नहीं आ रहा ।	<i>mujhe samajh nahin aa rahaa.</i>	I do not understand.
हिन्दी में x को क्या कहते हैं?	<i>Hindi me "X" ko kyaa kahate hain?</i>	How do you say "X" in Hindi?
माफ़ कीजिये	<i>maaf kiijiye</i>	Sorry/Excuse me
ज़रा सुनिये	<i>zaraa suniye</i>	Please listen

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1244>

धन्यवाद !

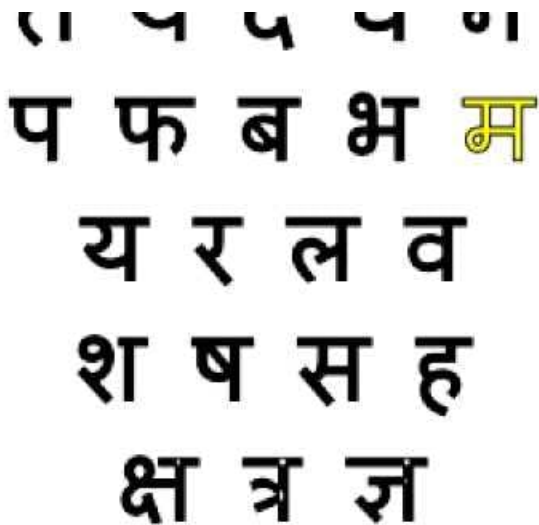
1.7: Extra/Optional online Materials

Practice Vowel Letters



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/l151/?p=1247>

Practice Consonant Letters



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/l151/?p=1247>

Hindi Letters Games

<https://www.digitaldialects.com/Hindi/alphabet.htm>

धन्यवाद !

Thank you!

2: BEGINNING CONVERSATIONS

2.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 1

2.2: Greetings and Introductions

2.3: Informal Conversations

2.4: Formal Conversations

2.5: Study Abroad

2.6: Grammar- Gender and Number

2.7: Personal Pronouns with Verb "To be"

2.8: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

2.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 1

Review of Chapter 1

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=753>

Review Worksheet: Please write these words in Hindi

arth	bhaaShaa	hindii	RiShi	hindustaan
bhaarat	namaste	praNaam	umr	Khushii
bolanaa	likhanaa	sunanaa	vidyaarthii	shakti

Answer to review worksheet with English meaning of these words.

अर्थ	भाषा	हिन्दी	ऋषि	हिन्दुस्तान
Meaning	Language	Hindi	Sage	Hindustan
भारत	नमस्ते	प्रणाम	उम्र	खुशी
India	Hello, Bye	Hello, Bye	Age	Happiness
बोलना	लिखना	सुनना	विद्यार्थी	शक्ति
To speak	To write	To listen	Student	Power

धन्यवाद!

2.2: Greetings and Introductions

Greetings

Vocabulary 1. List of words for formal and informal greetings

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English meaning</u>
नमस्ते <i>n.m.</i>	<i>namaste</i>	Hello
क्या <i>pron. & adj.</i>	<i>kyaa</i>	What
हाल <i>n.m.</i>	<i>haal</i>	Condition/Situation
क्या हाल है?	<i>kyaa haal hai?</i>	How are you (informal)
सब <i>adj.</i>	<i>sab</i>	All
ठीक <i>adj.</i>	<i>Thiik</i>	Okay
सब ठीक है	<i>sab Thiik hai.</i>	All is well
और <i>conj.</i>	<i>aur</i>	And
तुम <i>pron.</i>	<i>tum</i>	You (Informal)
मैं <i>pron.</i>	<i>main</i>	I
भी <i>adv. & conj.</i>	<i>bhii</i>	too
चलना <i>v.it.</i>	<i>chalanaa</i>	to walk/to go
फिर <i>adj.</i>	<i>phir</i>	again
मिलना <i>v.it</i>	<i>milanaa</i>	to meet/to see

Instructor Video: [Basic Greetings](#)

Introductions

Vocabulary 2. Introduction

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>
परिचय <i>n.m.</i>	<i>parichay</i>	Introduction
आपका <i>adj.</i>	<i>aapkaa</i>	Your (Honorific/Formal)
नाम <i>n.m.</i>	<i>naam</i>	Name
मेरा <i>pron.</i>	<i>meraa</i>	My
कहाँ <i>adv.</i>	<i>kahaan</i>	Where
से <i>pp.</i>	<i>se</i>	From

आप <i>pron.</i>	<i>aap</i>	You (Honorific/Formal)
कितना <i>adj.</i>	<i>kitnaa</i>	How much/many
साल <i>n.m.</i>	<i>saal</i>	year
की <i>pp.</i>	<i>kii</i>	's (of). Example: मैं बीस साल का हूँ "I am of 20 years old."
उम्र <i>n.f.</i>	<i>umr</i>	Age
यह <i>pron.</i>	<i>ye</i>	S/he, This
लड़का <i>n.m.</i>	<i>laRakaa</i>	Boy
कौन <i>pron. & adj.</i>	<i>kaun</i>	Who
अच्छा <i>adj.</i>	<i>achchhaa</i>	Good/Well
धन्यवाद <i>n.m.</i>	<i>dhanyawaad</i>	Thanks
मिलना <i>v.it</i>	<i>milnaa</i>	To meet
खुशी <i>n.f.</i>	<i>khushii</i>	Happiness
मुझे <i>pron.</i>	<i>mujhe</i>	To me (Dative case form of I)
अंग्रेज़ी <i>n.f.</i>	<i>angrezii</i>	English
राजनीति शास्त्र <i>n.m.</i>	<i>raajniiti shaastr</i>	Political Science
अर्थ शास्त्र <i>n.m.</i>	<i>arth shaastr</i>	Economics

Reading: परिचय "Introduction"

Context: Vidya walked in her Hindi class first day, and meet Shilpaa and Peter.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
विद्या:	नमस्ते !	<i>namaste!</i>	Hello!
शिल्पा:	नमस्ते !	<i>namaste!</i>	Hello!
विद्या:	आपका नाम क्या है?	<i>aapkaa naam kyaa hai?</i>	What is your name?
शिल्पा:	मेरा नाम शिल्पा है। और आपका?	<i>meraa naam shilpaa hai. aur aapkaa?</i>	My name is Shilpa. And yours?
विद्या:	मेरा नाम विद्या है।	<i>meraa naam Vidya hai.</i>	My name is Vidya.
शिल्पा:	आप कहाँ से हैं?	<i>aap kahaan se hain?</i>	Where are you from?
विद्या:	मैं मिशिगन से हूँ। आप कहाँ से हैं ?	<i>main Michigan se hoon. aap kahaan se hain?</i>	I am from Michigan. Where are you from?
शिल्पा:	मैं शिकागो से हूँ।	<i>main Chicago se hoon.</i>	I am from Chicago.
विद्या:	आप कितने साल की हैं?	<i>aap kitane saal kii hain?</i>	How old are you?
शिल्पा:	मैं बीस साल की हूँ। आपकी उम्र कितनी है?	<i>main biis saal kii hoon. aapkii umr kitanii hai?</i>	I am 20. What is your age?
विद्या:	मैं इक्कीस (साल) की हूँ।	<i>main ikkiis (saal) kii hoon.</i>	I am 21.
शिल्पा:	आपका मेजर क्या है?	<i>aapkaa major kyaa hai?</i>	What is your major?
विद्या:	मेरा मेजर अंग्रेज़ी है। और आपका ?	<i>meraa major angrezii hai. aur aapakaa?</i>	My major is English. And yours?
शिल्पा:	मेरा मेजर राजनीति शास्त्र है।	<i>meraa major raajaniiti shaastra hai.</i>	My major is Political science.

विद्या:	यह लड़का कौन है?	<i>ye laRakaa kaun hai?</i>	Who is this boy?
शिल्पा:	यह पीटर है।	<i>ye Peter hai.</i>	He is Peter.
विद्या:	नमस्ते पीटर !	<i>namaste Peter!</i>	Hello Peter!
पीटर:	नमस्ते ! आपका नाम क्या है ?	<i>namaste! aapkaa naam kyaa hai?</i>	Hello! What is your name?
विद्या:	मैं विद्या हूँ। आप कैसे हैं?	<i>main vidyaa hoon. aap kaise hain?</i>	I am Vidya. How are you?
पीटर:	मैं अच्छा हूँ। और आप?	<i>main achchhaa hoon. aur aap?</i>	I am well. and you?
विद्या:	मैं भी अच्छी हूँ, धन्यवाद ! आपकी उम्र कितनी है?	<i>main bhii achchhii hoon, Thanks! aapkii umr kitanii hai.</i>	I am well too. Thanks! What is your age?
पीटर:	मैं उन्नीस साल का हूँ। आपका मेजर क्या है ?	<i>main unniis saal kaa hoon. aapakaa major kyaa hai?</i>	I am 19 years old. What is your major?
विद्या:	मेरा मेजर अंग्रेज़ी है, और आपका?	<i>meraa major angrezii hai, aur aapakaa?</i>	My major is English. And yours?
पीटर:	मेरा भी ।	<i>meraa bhii.</i>	Mine too.
विद्या:	आप से मिलकर खुशी हुई ।	<i>aap se milakar khushii huii.</i>	Nice to meet you.
पीटर:	मुझे भी, नमस्ते !	<i>mujhe bhii, namaste!</i>	Me too, Bye!
विद्या:	नमस्ते !	<i>namaste!</i>	Bye!

Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: परिचय

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=757>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=757>

Question & Answer

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=757>

धन्यवाद!

2.3: Informal Conversations

Reading: Informal Conversation Between Friends

Context: Hrithik and Vidya are friends and study together in a school. They saw each other in school before going to their class.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
ऋतिक:	नमस्ते !	<i>namaste!</i>	Hello!
विद्या:	नमस्ते !	<i>namaste!</i>	Hello!
ऋतिक:	क्या हाल है?	<i>kyaa haal hai?</i>	How are you?
विद्या:	सब ठीक है और तुम?	<i>sab Thiik hai. aur tum?</i>	All is well. and you?
ऋतिक:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ	<i>main bhii Thiik hoon.</i>	I am well too.
विद्या:	क्लास चलें?	<i>class chalen?</i>	Should we go to class?
ऋतिक:	चलो	<i>chalo.</i>	Let's go.
क्लास के बाद "After the class."			
विद्या:	फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते !	<i>phir milenge, namaste!</i>	See you again, Bye!
ऋतिक:	ठीक है, नमस्ते !	<i>Thiik hai, namaste!</i>	Okay, Bye!

Listening: Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [Informal Conversation](#)

Activity

Please find a friend who speaks Hindi and/or a native speaker and practice this conversation with her/him. Please also record your conversation. After recording you can download your recording to share with your friends/teachers for feedback. This is also good for self-reflection.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=759>

Informal Conversation: Asking for Phone Number & eMail

Vocabulary 3. Learn Hindi Number 0-10

Hindi	English	Hindi	Transliteration
०	0	शून्य	<i>shunya</i>
१	1	एक	<i>ek</i>
२	2	दो	<i>do</i>

३	3	तीन	tiin
४	4	चार	chaar
५	5	पांच	paanch
६	6	छः/छे	chhah/chhe
७	7	सात	saat
८	8	आठ	aaTh
९	9	नौ	nau
१०	10	दस	das

Reading: Informal Conversation – Asking for phone number and email address

Context: Hindi teacher assigned a group work and puts Shilpa and Peter in one group. Now Shilpa and Peter need to exchange their e.mail address and phone number.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
शिल्पा:	हेलो पीटर! क्या चल रहा है?	Hello Peter! kyaa chal rahaa hai?	Hello Peter! What is going on?
पीटर:	नमस्ते शिल्पा, सब ठीक है। क्या हाल है?	namaste Shilpaa, sab Thiik hai kyaa haal hai?	Hellp Shilpa, All is well. How are you?
शिल्पा:	सब ठीक है। अच्छा, आपका ई.मेल एड्रेस क्या है?	sab Thiik hai achchhaa, aapkaa e.mail address kyaa hai?	All is well. Okay, what is your e.mail address?
पीटर:	मेरा ई.मेल एड्रेस peter@gmail.com है। और आपका?	meraa e.mail address peter@gmail.com hai. aur aapkaa?	My e.mail address is peter@gmail.com. And yours?
शिल्पा:	मेरा ई.मेल एड्रेस shilpaa@gmail.com है।	meraa e.mail address shilpaa@gmail.com hai.	My e.mail address is shilpaa@gmail.com.
पीटर:	आपका फ़ोन नंबर क्या है?	aapkaa phone number kyaa hai?	What is your phone number?
शिल्पा:	मेरा फ़ोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है। और आपका?	meraa phone number 555-xxx-xxxx hai. aur aapkaa?	My phone number is 555-xxx-xxx. And yours?
पीटर:	मेरा फ़ोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है।	meraa phone number 555-xxx-xxx hai.	My phone number is 555-xxx-xxx.
शिल्पा:	धन्यवाद ! फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते ।	dhanyawaad! phir milenge, namaste.	Thanks! See you again, Bye.
पीटर:	अच्छा, बाय!	achchhaa, bye!	Okay, Bye!

Listening: Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [Asking for contact information](#)

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=759>

Activities

In your classroom and/or outside the classroom, identify 2-3 Hindi learners/speakers. Introduce yourself, and ask questions in Hindi such as name, major, age, where is s/he from, phone number, and e.mail address. In addition to these 6 questions, please try to create 2-4 more questions based on your own creativity.

		दोस्त 1	दोस्त 2	दोस्त 3
1	आपका नाम क्या है?			
2	आप कहाँ से हैं?			
3	आप कहाँ रहते/रहती हैं?			
4	आपकी उम्र क्या है?			
5	आपका मेजर क्या है?			
6	आपका फ़ोन नंबर क्या है?			
7	आपका ई.मेल एड्रेस क्या है?			

धन्यवाद !

2.4: Formal Conversations

Reading: Formal Conversation with a Hindi Teacher

Context: After the class, Vidya sees her Hindi teacher.

Name	Hindi	Transliteration	English
विद्या:	नमस्ते, अध्यापक जी	<i>namaste, adhyaapak ji</i>	Hello Sir
अक्षय:	नमस्ते, विद्या जी। आप कैसी हैं ?	<i>namaste, Vidya ji. aap kaisii hain?</i>	Hello Vidya ji. How are you?
विद्या:	मैं अच्छी हूँ। धन्यवाद। आप कैसे हैं?	<i>main achchhii hoon. Dhanyawaad. aap kaise hain?</i>	I am good. Thank you. How are you?
अक्षय:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ। फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते।	<i>main bhii Thiik hoon. phir milenge, namaste.</i>	I am good too. See you again, bye.
विद्या:	फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते।	<i>phir milenge, namaste.</i>	See you again, bye.

Video 3. Listening: Formal Conversation with a Hindi Teacher

Listening: Please watch the following video and listen to the above conversation and check your reading and pronunciation.

Instructor Video: [Conversation with a Hindi teacher](#)

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=761>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=761>

Activities

Please go around in the classroom and/or outside the classroom and say “Hello” to your friends and ask them “how are you?” and bid them “see you again, bye!” You can record your conversation here and share with your other friends and/or teacher.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=761>

धन्यवाद !

2.5: Study Abroad

Formal Conversation: Study Abroad

Jen is a Hindi student at one of the universities in America and planning to go to India for three months to learn Hindi. In India, she is going to stay with a host family. She is planning to send her host family a video introducing herself. Before she makes the video, she wrote her script.

Vocabulary 4 and Reading

<u>Hindi</u>	<u>Transliteration</u>	<u>English</u>
प्रिये <i>adj.</i>	<i>priye</i>	Dear
मेज़बान <i>adj.</i>	<i>mezabaan</i>	Host
परिवार <i>n.m.</i>	<i>pariwaar</i>	Family
बाईस <i>adj.</i>	<i>baaiis</i>	twenty two
साल <i>n.m.</i>	<i>saal</i>	year
विश्वविद्यालय <i>n.m.</i>	<i>vishwa-vidyaalay</i>	University
छात्रा <i>n.f.</i>	<i>chhaatraa</i>	Student (female)
मेरा <i>adj.</i>	<i>meraa</i>	My
मेजर <i>n.m.</i>	<i>major</i>	Major
संगीत <i>n.m.</i>	<i>sangiit</i>	Music
राज्य <i>n.m.</i>	<i>raajy</i>	State
मगर <i>conj.</i>	<i>magar</i>	But
रहना <i>v.it.</i>	<i>rahanaa</i>	To live
लोग <i>n.m.</i>	<i>log</i>	People
मिलना <i>v.it.</i>	<i>milanaa</i>	To meet
x के लिए <i>pp.</i>	<i>X ke liye</i>	For X
बहुत <i>adj. & adv.</i>	<i>bahut</i>	Very
उत्साहित <i>adj.</i>	<i>utsaahit</i>	Excited
आपकी <i>adj.</i>	<i>aapakii</i>	Yours
अतिथी <i>n.m.</i>	<i>atithii</i>	Guest

प्रिये मेज़बान परिवार,

नमस्ते!

मेरा नाम जेन है। मैं बाईस साल की हूँ। मैं एक विश्वविद्यालय में छात्रा हूँ। मेरा मेजर संगीत है। मैं अमेरिका के विस्कॉन्सिन राज्य से हूँ, मगर, मैं न्यू-यॉर्क में रहती हूँ। मेरा फ़ोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है। मेरा ई.मेल एड्रेस jen@gmail.com है।

मैं आप लोगों से मिलने के लिए बहुत उत्साहित हूँ।

आपकी अतिथी

जेन

Test Yourself

Question Answer

Based on the above reading about Jen. Please answer the following questions.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1284>

Activity

Imagine that you are meeting someone new either on social media or face-to-face. Please introduce yourself and end by saying "Nice to meet you, bye." You can record yourself and share this with your friends/teacher and also on social media.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1284>

धन्यवाद !

2.6: Grammar- Gender and Number

Gender

Instructor Video: [Gender](#)

In Hindi, nouns can be divided into two types of gender, namely पुलिंग “Masculine,” and स्त्रीलिंग “Feminine.” Like English, Hindi has natural gender such as boy and girl, man and woman. Unlike English though, Hindi has grammatical gender. For example: Book, table, etc. are female. Whereas, room, house, door, etc. are male.

There are no certain rules to learn about gender assignment to particular noun in Hindi. Based on common observation, masculine and feminine nouns can be further classified in two subcategories as shown in the following table (1).

	Masculine	Feminine
Marked (Type 1)	Nouns that end in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that end in -ई/-इ “-i/ii.”
Examples	लड़का <i>laRakaa</i> “boy.” कमरा <i>kamaraa</i> “room.” बच्चा <i>bachchaa</i> “boy child.” दरवाज़ा <i>darawaazaa</i> “door.”	लड़की <i>laRakii</i> “girl” बच्ची <i>bachchii</i> “girl child.” खिड़की <i>khiRakii</i> “window.” कुर्सी <i>kursii</i> “chair.”
Unmarked (Type 2)	Nouns that do not end in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that do not end in -ई/-इ “-i/ii.”
Examples	घर <i>ghar</i> “home.” फल <i>phal</i> “fruit.” सेब <i>seb</i> “apple.” पुस्तकालय <i>pustakaalay</i> “library.”	किताब <i>kitaab</i> “book.” मेज़ <i>mez</i> “table.” तस्वीर <i>taswiir</i> “picture.” कमीज़ <i>kamiiz</i> “shirt.”

Table 1. Sub-categories of Masculine and Feminine Gender

But these rules have multiple exceptions such as:

Nouns ending in -आ “-aa” but feminine.

- माता *maataa* “mother.”
- लता *lataa* “leaf,”
- घटा *ghaTaa* “cloud”
- दवा *dawaa* “medicine,” etc.

Nouns ending in -ई/-इ “-i/ii” but masculine.

- साथी *saathii* “Friend.”
- हाथी *hathii* “Elephant.”
- विद्यार्थी *vidyaarthii* “Student” etc.

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

Number

Instructor Video: Number

Like English, Hindi has two numbers, namely, singular number, and plural number. To change singular nouns into plurals in Hindi, it is important to know the gender of the nouns and apply the following rules.

- All marked masculine nouns (that end in -आ “-aa.”) change into -ए “-e.”
- Unmarked masculine nouns (that do not end in -आ “-aa.”) do not change their form in plural.
- All marked feminine nouns (that end in -इ/ई “i/ii.”) change into -इयाँ “-iyan.”
- Unmarked feminine nouns (that do not end in -इ/ई “i/ii.”) change into -यें/एँ “-yen.”

The following table (2) summarizes these rules and shows examples.

	Masculine	Feminine
Marked (Type 1)	Nouns that ends in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that ends in -इ/ई “-i/ii.”
Rule for plural	change -आ “-aa” into -ए “-e”	change -इ/ई “-i/ii” into -इयाँ “-iyan”
Examples	लड़का – लड़के <i>laRake</i> “boys.” कमरा – कमरे <i>kamare</i> “rooms.” बच्चा – बच्चे <i>bachche</i> “boy children.” दरवाज़ा – दरवाज़े <i>darawaaze</i> “door.s”	लड़की – लड़कियाँ <i>laRakyan</i> “girls” बच्ची – बच्चियाँ <i>bachchian</i> “girl children.” खिड़की – खिड़कियाँ <i>khiRakian</i> “windows.” कुर्सी – कुर्सियाँ <i>kursian</i> “chairs.”
Unmarked (Type 2)	Nouns that do not end in -आ “-aa.”	Nouns that do not end in -इ/ई “-i/ii.”
Rule for plural	No changes in form	change into -यें/एँ “-yen.”
Examples	घर – घर <i>ghar</i> “homes.” फल – फल <i>phal</i> “fruits.” सेब – सेब <i>seb</i> “apples.” पुस्तकालय – पुस्तकालय <i>pustakaalay</i> “libraries.”	किताब – किताबें <i>kitaaben</i> “books.” मेज़ – मेज़ें <i>mezen</i> “table.s” तस्वीर – तस्वीरें <i>taswiiren</i> “pictures.” कमीज़ – कमीज़ें <i>kamiizen</i> “shirts.”

Table 2. Summary for rules to change singular to plural nouns based on the sub-categories of Masculine and Feminine Gender.

Test yourself

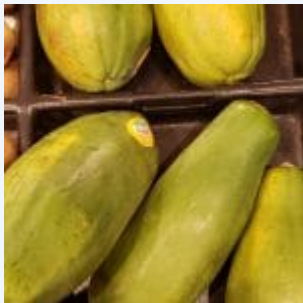
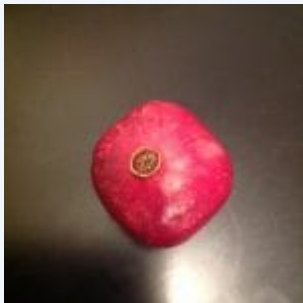
घर-गृहस्थी (House & household)			
Please learn these vocabulary and change them into plural.			
Singular Nouns	gender	Meaning	Plural Nouns
दीवार	f.	wall	

दूध	<i>m.</i>	milk	
मकान	<i>m.</i>	house	
फ़र्श	<i>f.</i>	floor	
कुर्सी	<i>f.</i>	chair	
दरवाज़ा	<i>m.</i>	door	
खिड़की	<i>f.</i>	window	
छत	<i>f.</i>	roof, ceiling	
गुसलख़ाना	<i>m.</i>	bathroom	
तौलिया	<i>m.</i>	towel	
तेल	<i>m.</i>	oil	
साबुन	<i>m.</i>	soap	
आईना / शीशा	<i>m.</i>	mirror	
कंघी	<i>f.</i>	comb	
अलमारी	<i>f.</i>	cupboard, wardrobe, shelf	
खाट	<i>f.</i>	cot	
पलंग	<i>m.</i>	bed	
चादर	<i>m.</i>	sheet	
रज़ाई	<i>f.</i>	quilt	
कंबल	<i>m.</i>	blanket	
तकिया	<i>m.</i>	pillow	
लैंप	<i>m.</i>	lamp	
बल्ब	<i>m.</i>	bulb	
घड़ी	<i>f.</i>	watch, clock	
चाकू	<i>m.</i>	knife	
तस्वीर	<i>f.</i>	picture, photograph	
कैलेंडर		calendar	
थैला	<i>m.</i>	<i>bag</i>	
मोमबत्ती	<i>f.</i>	candle	
इस्तरी	<i>f.</i>	iron	
रसोई	<i>f.</i>	kitchen	
कटोरा	<i>m.</i>	big bowl	
कटोरी	<i>f.</i>	small bowl	
थाली	<i>f.</i>	metal plate	
बर्तन	<i>m.</i>	utensil	
कड़ाही	<i>f.</i>	a frying pan, wok	

गिलास	<i>m.</i>	glass	
चूल्हा	<i>m.</i>	stove	
चाबी	<i>f.</i>	key	
ताला	<i>m.</i>	lock	
चिमटा	<i>m.</i>	tongs	
पतीला	<i>m.</i>	cooking vessel	
तवा	<i>m.</i>	skillet	
चकला	<i>m.</i>	rolling board	
चौकी	<i>f.</i>	rolling board	
प्याला	<i>m.</i>	cup	
झाडू	<i>f.</i>	broom	
परदा	<i>m.</i>	curtain	
टोपी	<i>f.</i>	cap	
मोज़ा	<i>m.</i>	socks	
रूमाल	<i>m.</i>	handkerchief	

Vocabulary 5. Names of Fruits and Vegetables

फलों के नाम "Names of fruits"		
		
सेब <i>m. apple</i>	आम <i>m. mango</i>	केला <i>m. banana</i>
		
संतरा <i>m. orange</i>	तरबूज़ <i>m. watermelon</i>	अनन्नास <i>m. pineapple</i>

		 o by Hillary Nienhouse
पपीता <i>m. papaya</i>	अनार <i>m. pomegranate</i>	अँगूर <i>m. grapes</i>

सब्जियों के नाम "Names of Vegetables"

		
आलू <i>m. potato</i>	प्याज <i>m. onion</i>	टमाटर <i>m. tomato</i>
		
पालक <i>m. spinach</i>	मटर <i>m. peas</i>	फूल गोभी <i>f. cauliflower</i>
		
धनिया	पत्ता गोभी <i>f. cabbage</i>	बैंगन <i>m. egg plant</i>

		
शिमला मिर्च f. bell pepper	नींबू m. lemon	खीरा m. cucumber

Test Yourself

True/False

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

Vocabulary Test

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=768>

धन्यवाद!

2.7: Personal Pronouns with Verb "To be"

Verb "To be"

Instructor Video: [Verb "to be"](#)

Singular pronouns and verb "to be."			Plural pronouns and verb "to be."		
Hindi	Transliteration	English	Hindi	Transliteration	English
मैं __हूँ	main __hoon	I am __.	हम __हैं	hum __hain	We are __.
तू __है	tu __hai	You are __.			
तुम __हो	tum __ho	You are __.	तुम __हो	tum __ho	You are __.
आप __हैं	aap __hain	You are __.	आप __हैं	aap __hain	You are __.
यह/वह __है	ye/wo __hai	S/he, This/That is __.	ये/वे __हैं	ye/we __hain	They, These/Those are __.

Table 3. List of Personal pronouns with the forms of verb होना "to be."

Summary

Verb "to be"	Pronouns	Examples
हूँ hoon	मैं	मैं अध्यापक हूँ main adhyaapak hoon. I am a teacher.
हो ho	तुम	तुम छात्र हो tum chhaatr ho. You are a student
है hai	तू, यह, वह (Singular nouns)	तू लड़का है tu laRakaa hai. You are a boy. यह किताब है ye kitaab hai. This is a book. वह मेज़ है wo mez hai. That is a table. पीटर दोस्त है Peter dost hai. Peter is a friend.
हैं hain	हम, आप, ये, वे (Plural nouns/honorific)	हम छात्र हैं hum chhaatr hain. We are students. आप अच्छे हैं aap achchhe hain. You are good. ये/वे किसान हैं ye/we kisaan hain. They are farmers. ये सब्ज़ियाँ हैं ye sabziyaan hain. These are vegetables. वे फल हैं we phal hain. Those are fruits. फ़िलिप जी अध्यापक हैं Philip ji adhyaapak hain. Philip ji is my teacher,

Table 4. List of verb होना "to be," with personal pronouns.

Positive Sentence and the Verb होना “to be”

Unlike English, the standard word order of Hindi is: Subject-Object-Verb (SOV).

Structure 1:

English	Subject	Verb	Object
	This	is	a pen
Hindi	Subject	Object	Verb
	This	a pen	is
	यह	एक कलम	है ।

Negative Sentence in Hindi and the Verb होना “to be”

Structure 2:

English	Subject	Verb	Negative	Object
	This	is	not	a pen
Hindi	Subject	Object	Negative	Verb
	This	a pen	not	is
	यह	कलम	नहीं	है ।

Yes/No question and the Verb होना “to be”

In English, we move auxiliary verb at the beginning of a sentence to form a yes/no question. Whereas, in Hindi, the word क्या *kyaa* is used at the beginning of a sentence to form a yes/no question. Please note that here the word क्या *kyaa* does not mean “what.”

Structure 3:

English	Auxiliary verb	Subject	Object	
	Is	this	a pen	
Hindi	क्या <i>kyaa</i>	Subject	Object	Verb
	Kyaa	this	a pen	is
	क्या	यह	कलम	है ?

Yes/No question + Negative and the Verb होना “to be”

Structure 4:

English	Auxiliary verb	(negative)	Subject	(Negative)	Object
	Is	(not)	this	(not)	a pen
	Isn't this a pen? / Is this not a pen?				
Hindi	क्या <i>kyaa</i>	Subject	Object	Negative	Auxiliary Verb
	kyaa	this	a pen	not	is

	क्या	यह	कलम	नहीं	है ?
--	------	----	-----	------	------

Activities

Now as you know how to change a simple Hindi sentence into Negative, yes/no question, and yes/no question + negative, please fill the following table as instructed.

<u>Positive</u>	<u>Negative</u>	<u>Yes/No Question</u>	<u>Yes/No Question + Negative</u>
मैं अध्यापक हूँ।			
	हम दोस्त नहीं हैं।		
		क्या वे छात्र हैं?	
			क्या आप हिन्दुस्तानी हैं ?
तू भाई है।			
	तुम छात्रा नहीं हो।		
		क्या यह आलू है ?	
			क्या वह टमाटर नहीं है ?

Please fill in the blanks with suitable object to form five sentences with each pronoun given below. You can use the vocabulary list in this chapter or dictionary for any help that you need to complete this activity.

Subject	Object	Verb "to be."	English
मैं	अध्यापक	हूँ।	I am a teacher.
मैं			
मैं			
मैं			
मैं			
हम	दोस्त	हैं।	We are friends.
हम			
हम			
हम			
हम			
तू	होशियार	है।	You are smart.
तू			
तू			
तू			

तू			
तुम	लड़के	हो ।	You are a boy.
तुम			
तुम			
तुम			
तुम			
आप	अच्छी	हैं ।	You (female) are good.
आप			
आप			
आप			
आप			
यह	किताब	है ।	This is a book.
यह			
यह			
यह			
यह			
वह	आपका तौलिया	है ।	That is your towel.
वह			
वह			
वह			
वह			
ये	सब्जियां	हैं ।	These are vegetables.
ये			
ये			
ये			
ये			
ये			
वे	क्या	हैं ?	What are those?
वे			
वे			
वे			
वे			

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=770>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [2.7: Personal Pronouns with Verb "To be"](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan \(Michigan State University Libraries\)](#).

2.8: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

Cultural Notes

Topics	Explanation
Namaste नमस्ते	<i>Namaste</i> is used by Hello and bye at anytime of a day by Hindi speakers. It is culturally odd to shake hands so when you say <i>namaste</i> then just make the hand gesture. However, in business setting and bigger metropolitan cities, you will notice that people shake hands because of the effect of western world.
Personal Pronoun “You”	Unlike English, Hindi has three different second persona, personal pronoun “you.” तू <i>tu</i> : It is used with younger, intimate relation such as mother, and God, and some one who is lower in socio-economic status. It is a very informal way to say “You” in Hindi. तुम <i>tum</i> : It is used with friends, and with someone who is of equal status. It is somewhat informal. It should be used carefully only after confirming with your the person you are speaking to. आप <i>aap</i> : It is used with older and respected people of the community. It is also used for someone who is of higher socio-economic status. It is a very formal way to say “You” in Hindi.
Introduction	Typically, in Hindi speaking culture, you typically do not have to go on introducing yourself to everyone. Culturally, you will be introduced to other people by your host, a friend, and/or someone who already knows you. However, you should expect some very personal questions which may be culturally odd for you in your first meeting with someone, such as: are you married? how much money do you earn? etc. Please know that the sense of privacy is very different in different cultures.
Yes/No Question	You learned in this chapter that you can simply add क्या <i>kyaa</i> , at the beginning of a simple sentence to form a yes/no question. For example: क्या आप अमेरिकी हैं? Are you an American? However, it is very common for the native speakers to pose yes/no question by using simple sentence in raised tone. It is also very common in English. For example: आप अमेरिकी हैं? You are an American?
Gender	In this chapter, you learned that all Hindi nouns have grammatical gender. However, you may hear the native speakers to use Hindi words with incorrect gender during the conversation. It is because of two major reasons: (a) Not every one knows the gender of the noun hundred percent, (b) there are many dialects of Hindi which are mutually intelligible but do not have gender feature. So, they claim to be the native speaker of Hindi but their L1/mother tongue is not modern standard Hindi.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

Self-introduction:



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1281>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [2.8: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

3: परिवार "FAMILY"

- 3.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 2
- 3.2: Reading/Listening 1- मेरा परिवार
- 3.3: Reading/Listening 2- विद्या का परिवार
- 3.4: Study Abroad
- 3.5: Grammar of Adjectives
- 3.6: Apostrophe "S" ('s) in Hindi
- 3.7: Degree of Adjectives
- 3.8: "Wh-" Question/Interrogative Sentence
- 3.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

3.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 2

Vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=844>

Multiple Choice Questions on Gender, Number and Verb “to be”

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=844>

बातचीत “Conversation”

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=844>

धन्यवाद !

3.2: Reading/Listening 1- मेरा परिवार

मेरा परिवार “My Family”



“Family Bath Time” by Steve Wilson – over 10 million views Thanks !! is licensed under CC BY 2.0

Vocabulary

Family members and relatives

Hindi	Grammatical Categories	English
परिवार	<i>n.m.</i>	Family
रिश्तेदार	<i>n.m.</i>	Relative
माँ / माता	<i>n.f.</i>	Mother
पिता	<i>n.m.</i>	Father
भाई	<i>n.m.</i>	Brother
भाभी	<i>n.f.</i>	Brother's wife
बहन / बहिन	<i>n.f.</i>	Sister
बहनोई	<i>n.m.</i>	Sister's husband
दादा	<i>n.m.</i>	Paternal Grand father
दादी	<i>n.f.</i>	Paternal Grand mother
नाना	<i>n.m.</i>	Maternal Grand father
नानी	<i>n.f.</i>	Maternal Grand mother
चाचा	<i>n.m.</i>	Father's brother

चाची	<i>n.f.</i>	Father's brother's wife
बुआ	<i>n.f.</i>	Father's sister
फूफा	<i>n.m.</i>	Father's sister's husband
मामा	<i>n.m.</i>	Mother's brother
मामी	<i>n.f.</i>	Mother's brother's wife
मौसी	<i>n.f.</i>	Mother's sister
मौसा	<i>n.m.</i>	Mother's sister's husband
चचेरा भाई / बहन	<i>n.m./f.</i>	Cousin brother-sister (kids of चाचा-चाची)
फूफेरा भाई / बहन	<i>n.m./f.</i>	Cousin brother-sister (kids of बुआ-फूफा)
ममेरा भाई / बहन	<i>n.m./f.</i>	Cousin brother-sister (kids of मामा-मामी)
मौसेरा भाई / बहन	<i>n.m./f.</i>	Cousin brother-sister (kids of मौसा-मौसी)
सौतेला भाई / बहन	<i>n.m./f.</i>	Half brother/sister
पालतू कुत्ता / बिल्ली	<i>n.m./f.</i>	Pet dog / cat

शादी के बाद के रिश्तेदार “Family after marriage”

पति	<i>n.m.</i>	Husband
पत्नी	<i>n.f.</i>	Wife
बेटा	<i>n.m.</i>	Son
बेटी	<i>n.f.</i>	Daughter
बहू	<i>n.f.</i>	Daughter-in-law
दामाद	<i>n.m.</i>	Son-in-law
सास	<i>n.m.</i>	Mother-in-law
ससुर	<i>n.f.</i>	Father-in-law
साला	<i>n.m.</i>	Brother-in-law (for a man)
साली	<i>n.f.</i>	Sister-in-law (for a man)
देवर	<i>n.m.</i>	Brother-in-law (for a woman)
देवरानी	<i>n.f.</i>	Wife of a brother-in-law (for a woman)
ननद	<i>n.f.</i>	Sister-in-law (for a woman)
ननादोई	<i>n.m.</i>	Husband of sister-in-law (for a woman)

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=805>

परिवार के बारे में “About the family”

Context: Shilpa and Peter are in the same Hindi class. Their teacher, Akshay, asked them to collect information about each other's family members. In this reading/listening, they are asking questions to each other.

Pre-reading Activity 1: Please respond to the following questions. Please write your response in Hindi in the given space.

Hindi	English	Your response in Hindi
आपका नाम	Your name	
आपके पिता जी का नाम	Your father's name	
आपकी माता जी का नाम	Your mother's name	
आपके कितने भाई हैं ?	How many brother do you have?	
भाइयों का नाम	Your brothers' names	
आपकी कितनी बहनें हैं ?	How many sisters do you have?	
बहनों के नाम	Your sisters' names	
आपके दादा जी का नाम	Your paternal grand-father's name	
आपकी दादी जी का नाम	Your paternal grand-mother's name	
क्या आपके पास कोई पालतू जानवर है?	Do you have any pet?	
पालतू जानवर का नाम	Your pet's name	

Pre-reading Activity 2: Based on the above information, please draw a family tree.

Reading

Please read the following conversation aloud with a partner (or alone)

Hindi	English
शिल्पा: नमस्ते पीटर ! आप कैसे हैं ?	Shilpa: Hello Peter! How are you?
पीटर: नमस्ते शिल्पा, मैं अच्छा हूँ, धन्यवाद । और आप ?	Peter: Hello Shilpa, I am well, thanks. And you?
शिल्पा: मैं भी ठीक हूँ । धन्यवाद । चलिये, काम शुरू करते हैं ।	Shilpa: I am okay too. Thanks. Let's start the work.
पीटर: ठीक है। बताइये, आपका परिवार कहाँ रहता है ?	Peter: Okay. Please tell, where does your family live?
शिल्पा: मेरा परिवार शिकागो में रहता है । और आपका ?	Shilpa: My family lives in Chicago. And yours?
पीटर: मेरा परिवार डेट्रॉइट में है ।	Peter: My family lives in Detroit.

शिल्पा: आपकी माता जी का नाम क्या है ?	Shilpa: What is your mother's name?
पीटर: मेरी माँ का नाम लिज़ है। आपकी माँ का नाम क्या है?	Peter: My mother's name is Liz. What is your mother's name?
शिल्पा: मेरी माँ का नाम देवकी पटेल है। आपकी माँ क्या करती हैं ?	Shilpa: My mother's name is Devaki Patel. What does your mother do?
पीटर: मेरी माँ एक विद्यालय में अध्यापिका हैं। और आपकी माँ ?	Peter: My mother is a school teacher. and your mother?
शिल्पा: मेरी माँ एक गृहिणी हैं। आपके पिता जी का नाम क्या है ?	Shilpa: My mother is a house-wife. What is your father's name?
पीटर: मेरे पिता जी का नाम एडम है, और वह एक डॉक्टर हैं। और आपके पिता जी का नाम क्या है और वह क्या करते हैं ?	Peter: My father's name is Adam, he is a doctor. What is your father's name and what does he do?
शिल्पा: मेरे पिता जी का नाम कृष्णचंद पटेल है, और वह एक वैज्ञानिक हैं।	Shilpa: My father's name is Krishnachand Patel, and he is a scientist.
पीटर: आपके कितने भाई बहन हैं ?	Peter: How many brothers and sisters do you have?
शिल्पा: मेरा एक भाई है, उसका नाम साहिल है। मेरी कोई बहन नहीं है। और आपके कितने भाई बहन हैं ?	Shilpa: I have a brother, his name is Sahil. I have no sisters. And how many brothers and sisters do you have?
पीटर: मैं इकलौता हूँ। मेरे कोई भाई बहन नहीं हैं।	Peter: I am only one. I have no brothers and sisters.
शिल्पा: क्या आपके दादा-दादी भी आपके साथ डेट्रॉइट में रहते हैं ?	Shilpa: Do your grand-parents live with you in Detroit?
पीटर: नहीं मेरे दादा-दादी हमारे साथ नहीं रहते। उनका अपना अलग घर है। क्या आपके दादा-दादी आपके साथ रहते हैं?	Peter: No, my grand-parents do not live with us. They have their own separate house. Do your grand-parents live with you?
शिल्पा: जी हाँ। हिन्दुस्तानी परिवार में, माता-पिता, भाई-बहन, दादा-दादी, चाचा-चाची, सब एक साथ एक घर में रहते हैं।	Shilpa: Yes, In an Indian family, mother-father, brother-sister, grand-parents, uncle-aunt, all live together in the same house.
पीटर: अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है। अच्छा, फिर मिलेंगे, नमस्ते।	Peter: Oh Wao! This is a very good thing. Okay, see you again, Namaste.
शिल्पा: ठीक है, बाय	Shilpa: Okay, Bye

Listening

परिवार के बारे में

Activities

Please provide the following information about Shipa and Peter. Please note that some answers may not be available in the text, you can leave them blank.

सवाल "Questions"	शिल्पा	पीटर
x का परिवार कहाँ रहता है ?		
x की माता जी का नाम		
x की माता जी क्या करती हैं ?		
x के पिता जी का नाम		
x के पिता जी क्या करते हैं ?		
x के कितने भाई-बहन हैं?		

x के भाई का नाम		
x की बहन का नाम		

Family Tree: Based on the above reading/listening, please draw Shilpa's and Perter's family trees.

Writing/Speaking

Based on your pre-reading, and reading, please write (10-15 sentences)/audio record introducing your own family members.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=805>

Complete the following conversation: Please choose the correct question/prompt for each answer/response in the following conversation.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=805>

धन्यवाद !

3.3: Reading/Listening 2- विद्या का परिवार

विद्या का परिवार और उसके रिश्तेदार “Vidya’s family and her relatives”



“Dashain Celebration in Nepal” by stewickie is licensed under CC BY-NC-ND 2.0

Vocabulary

Vidya’s family and relatives

Hindi	Grammatical Categories	English
मेरा	<i>adj.</i>	My
हमारा	<i>adj.</i>	Our
तेरा	<i>adj.</i>	Your
तुम्हारा	<i>adj.</i>	Your
आपका	<i>adj.</i>	Your
इसका / उसका	<i>adj.</i>	His / Her
इनका / उनका	<i>adj.</i>	Their
किसका	<i>adj.</i>	Whose (for singular)
किनका	<i>adj.</i>	Whose (for plural)
छोटा	<i>adj.</i>	Small / Younger
बड़ा	<i>adj.</i>	Big / Older
प्यारा	<i>adj.</i>	Lovely
सुखी	<i>adj.</i>	Happy

दुखी	<i>adj.</i>	Sad
स्वच्छ	<i>adj.</i>	Clean
साफ़	<i>adj.</i>	Clean
शुद्ध	<i>adj.</i>	Pure
गन्दा	<i>adj.</i>	Dirty
कुशल	<i>adj.</i>	Skilled
अकुशल	<i>adj.</i>	Unskilled
अभियंता	<i>n.m.</i>	Enginner
सरल	<i>adj.</i>	Simple / Easy
मुश्किल	<i>adj.</i>	Difficult/ Hard
महिला	<i>n.f.</i>	Woman
पुरुष	<i>n.m.</i>	Man
अच्छा	<i>adj.</i>	Good
बुरा	<i>adj.</i>	Bad
खराब	<i>adj.</i>	Bad
अध्यापिका	<i>n.f.</i>	Female teacher
होशियार	<i>adj.</i>	Intelligent
तेज	<i>adj.</i>	Intelligent / Fast/ clever
चतुर	<i>adj.</i>	Clever
मुख	<i>adj.</i>	Foolish
सुन्दर	<i>adj.</i>	Beautiful
खूबसूरत	<i>adj.</i>	Beautiful
बदसूरत	<i>adj.</i>	Ugly
कुरूप	<i>adj.</i>	Ugly
लंबा	<i>adj.</i>	Tall
नाटा	<i>adj.</i>	Short (in height)
बूढ़ा / बूढ़ी	<i>adj.</i>	Old (For animate nouns)
पुराना / पुरानी	<i>adj.</i>	Old (For inanimate nouns)
सदस्य	<i>n.m.</i>	Member
लोग	<i>n.m.</i>	People
त्योहार	<i>n.m.</i>	Festival
कुछ	<i>adj.</i>	Some
धनी / अमीर	<i>adj.</i>	Rich
निर्धन / गरीब	<i>adj.</i>	Poor
मोटा	<i>adj.</i>	Fat/Big
पतला	<i>adj.</i>	Thin

ईमानदार	<i>adj.</i>	Honest
बेईमान	<i>adj.</i>	Dishonest
व्यापारी	<i>n.m.</i>	Business man/woman
कुँवारी / कुँवारा	<i>adj.</i>	Unmarried woman/man
शादीशुदा	<i>adj.</i>	Married
मेहनती	<i>adj.</i>	Hard-working
आलसी	<i>adj.</i>	Lazy
सामाजिक	<i>adj.</i>	Social
कार्यकर्ता	<i>n.m.</i>	Worker
प्रसिद्ध	<i>adj.</i>	Famous
मशहूर	<i>adj.</i>	Famous
बदनाम	<i>adj.</i>	Infamous
गायिका	<i>n.f.</i>	Female singer
किसान	<i>n.m.</i>	Farmer
गृहिणी	<i>n.f.</i>	House wife
सुख-दुःख की घड़ी	<i>phrase</i>	in the time of happiness and sorrow
साथ देना	<i>v.t</i>	To support

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=832>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=832>

Pre-reading activity: Please respond to the following questions/prompts about your relatives. Please write your response in Hindi in the given space.

Hindi	English	Your response
आपके परिवार में कितने सदस्य हैं?	How many members are there in your family?	
आपके कितने चाचा हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many uncles do you have? And what are their names?	
आपकी कितनी चाची हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many aunts do you have? And what are their names?	

आपके कितने चचेरे भाई-बहन हैं ?	How many cousins do you have?	
आपकी कितनी बुआ हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many aunts do you have? And what are their names?	
आपके कितने फूफा हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many uncles do you have? And what are their names?	
आपके कितने फूफेरे भाई-बहन हैं ?	How many cousins do you have?	
आपके कितने मामा हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many uncles do you have? And what are their names?	
आपकी कितनी मामी हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many aunts do you have? And what are their names?	
आपके कितने ममेरे भाई-बहन हैं ?	How many cousins do you have?	
आपकी कितनी मौसी हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many aunts do you have? And what are their names?	
आपके कितने मौसा हैं ? और उनके नाम क्या हैं ?	How many uncles do you have? And what are their names?	
आपके कितने मौसेरे भाई-बहन हैं ?	How many cousins do you have?	

Reading

Please read the following text aloud

नमस्ते !

मेरा नाम विद्या है। मेरा एक छोटा परिवार है। मैं अपने प्यारे और सुखी परिवार के साथ स्वच्छ मिशिगन के एक बड़े शहर डेट्रॉइट में रहती हूँ। मेरे पिता जी एक कुशल अभियंता हैं। मेरी माँ एक सरल हिन्दुस्तानी महिला हैं। मेरी माँ एक अच्छी अध्यापिका हैं। मेरे एक बड़े भाई हैं। वह एक होशियार छात्र हैं। मेरी एक छोटी बहन है। वह बहुत सुन्दर है। मेरी बहन मुझे से लम्बी है। मेरे बूढ़े दादा जी और बूढ़ी दादी जी भी हमारे साथ रहते हैं। सब मिलाकर, मेरे परिवार में, सात सदस्य/लोग हैं।

मेरा परिवार, हर त्योहार में, रिश्तेदारों को अपने घर बुलाता है। हमारे कुछ रिश्तेदार बहुत धनी या अमीर हैं, मगर कुछ रिश्तेदार कुछ गरीब भी हैं। मेरे बड़े चाचा और चाची शिकागो में रहते हैं। मेरे चाचा मेरे पिता जी से मोटे हैं। मेरे चाचा एक ईमानदार पुलिस हैं। मेरी चाची एक चतुर व्यापारी हैं। मेरी बुआ अभी कुँवारी हैं। वह एक मेहनती सामाजिक कार्यकर्ता हैं। मेरे मामा और मौसी अभी हिन्दुस्तान में हैं। मेरे मामा एक प्रसिद्ध प्रोफेसर हैं। मेरी मौसी एक मशहूर गायिका हैं। मेरे बूढ़े नाना जी एक किसान थे। मेरी नानी एक कुशल गृहिणी थी।

हमारे रिश्तेदार हर सुख-दुःख की घड़ी में एक दूसरे का साथ देते हैं।

धन्यवाद !

Listening

विद्या का परिवार

Activities

Answer the following questions

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=832>

Please click on all the adjectives in the following text.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=832>

Writing/Speaking

Please make a power-point presentation about your family and your relatives (extended) family in about 20-25 sentences. You can use photos of your family members and relatives. After making your presentation, please video record your presentation and share it with your friends/teacher. Please make sure to use at least 10 adjectives to describe your family members and relatives.

धन्यवाद !

3.4: Study Abroad

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



Context: In the chapter 2, Jen wrote a letter to her host family introducing herself. In this chapter, I am including a letter from her host mother to her introducing her family.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activity

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1299>

Reading: सीता का पत्र “Sita’s letter”

प्रिय जेन,

नमस्ते !

आपका पत्रमिला और उसे पढ़ कर बहुत खुशी हुई। इस पत्र में, मैं आपको अपने परिवार के बारे में बताऊँगी। जैसा कि आप जानती हैं, मेरा परिवार दिल्ली में रहता है। दिल्ली भारत की राजधानी है।

मेरा परिवार बहुत बड़ा है। आशा करती हूँ कि आपको संयुक्त परिवार में रहने का अच्छा अनुभव होगा। मैं अपने पति और उनके बड़े परिवार के साथ रहती हूँ। मेरे पति श्री रामचन्द्र सिंह पचपन साल के हैं, और एक सरकारी कार्यालय में काम करते हैं। मेरे दो बच्चे हैं, एक लड़का राजवीर, और एक लड़की रजनी है। मेरे ससुर श्री दशरथ प्रसाद सिंह, लगभग अस्सी साल के हैं, और सेवा-निवृत्त हैं। मेरी सास का नाम श्रीमती कौशल्या देवी है। वह एक घरेलू और धार्मिक महिला हैं। मेरे दो छोटे देवर (पति के भाई) और एक छोटी ननद (पति की बहन) हैं। छोटे देवों के नाम लक्ष्मण सिंह और भरत सिंह हैं। लक्ष्मण एक निजी कंपनी में काम करते हैं और शादीशुदा हैं। उनकी एक तीन साल की बेटी है। भरत अभी पढ़ाई कर रहे हैं और कुँवारे हैं। मेरी ननद का नाम सरस्वती है। सरस्वती पचीस साल की एक सुन्दर और कुँवारी लड़की है। वह क्रिकेट की एक बहुत अच्छी खिलाड़ी है। वह दिल्ली के लिए क्रिकेट खेलती है।

इनके अलावा, मेरे घर में एक नौकरानी है। उसका नाम रूपा है। रूपा घर की साफ़-सफ़ाई करती है। हमारा एक पालतू कुत्ता भी है। हम प्यार से उसे टाइगर बुलाते हैं।

आशा है कि हम जल्दी मिलेंगे। नमस्ते !

आपकी मेज़बान माँ

सीता

Listening

सीता का पत्र

Activities

Based on the above reading/listening, please respond to the following questions/prompts.

Hindi	English	Your response
जेन कौन है ?	Who is Jen?	
सीता कौन है ?	Who is Sita?	
सीता का परिवार कहाँ रहता है ?	Where does Sita's family live?	
भारत की राजधानी कहाँ है ?	Where is the capital of India?	
सीता के ससुर का नाम क्या है ?	What is the name of Sita's father-in-law ?	
सीता के ससुर की उम्र क्या है?	What is the age of Sita's father-in-law?	
सीता के ससुर क्या करते हैं ?	What does Sita's father-in-law do?	
सीता की सास कैसी महिला हैं ?	What type of woman Sita's mother-in-law is?	
सीता के पति का नाम क्या है ?	What is the name of Sita's husband?	
सीता के पति की उम्र क्या है?	What is the age of Sita's husband?	
सीता के पति क्या करते हैं ?	What does Sita's husband do?	
सीता के कितने बच्चे हैं ?	How many children do Sita have?	

सीता के कितने देवर हैं ?	How many brothers-in-law Sita has?	
सीता के देवरों के नाम क्या हैं ?	What are the names of Sita's brothers-in-law?	
सीता की कितनी ननद हैं ?	How many sisters-in-law Sita has?	
सीता की ननद का नाम क्या है?	What is the name of Sita's sister-in-law?	
सीता की ननद क्या करती है ?	What does Sita's sister-in-law do?	
सीता की नौकरानी का नाम क्या है ?	What is the name of Sita's maid servant?	
सीता की नौकरानी क्या करती है ?	What does Sita's maid servant do?	
टाइगर कौन है ?	Who is Tiger?	

Family Tree: Based on the reading/listening to Sita's letter to Jen. Please draw a Sita's family tree.

Make Sentences: Please form a sentence with each word given below.

Hindi	English	Sentence
अच्छा	Good	
बुरा	bad	
लंबा	Tall/Long	
छोटा	Short/Small/Younger	
बड़ा	Big/Elder	
सुन्दर	Beautiful	
कुरूप	Ugly	
होशियार	Intelligent	
मुखर्ष	Foolish	
मोटा	Fat/Big	

धन्यवाद !

3.5: Grammar of Adjectives

Adjectives Video

Instructor Video: Adjectives

Adjectives qualify nouns and pronouns. In Hindi, adjectives can be classified in two categories: (a) Marked, and (b) Unmarked.

(a) Marked Adjectives end in -आ . Marked adjective changes its form according to number and gender of the noun that it qualifies.

-आ : -आ ending adjective is for masculine singular.

-ए : -आ changes in -ए for plural nouns, and masculine honorific.

-ई : -आ changes in -ई for feminine noun.

Examples:

अच्छा लड़का (m.) “good boy,” अच्छी लड़की (f.) “good girl,” अच्छे बच्चे (plu.) “good children.”

बड़ा घर (m.) “big house,” बड़ी दीवार (f.) “big wall,” बड़े घर (plu.) “big houses.”

लंबा आदमी (m.) “tall man,” लंबी औरत (f.) “tall woman,” लंबे लोग (plu.) “tall people.”

Exception: There are a few adjectives like बढ़िया “good,” ज़िंदा “alive,” and मादा “female,” etc that end in -आ but do not change their forms according to number and gender of the nouns that these adjectives qualify. Most of these adjectives are Persian-Arabic loan words.

(b) Unmarked Adjectives are adjectives that do not end in -आ . Unmarked adjective does not change its form according to number and gender of the noun that it qualifies.

Examples:

तेज लड़का (m.) “smart boy,” तेज लड़की (f.) “smart girl,” तेज बच्चे (plu.) “smart children.”

मजबूत घर (m.) “strong house,” मजबूत दीवार (f.) “strong wall,” मजबूत घर (plu.) “strong houses.”

अमीर आदमी (m.) “rich man,” अमीर औरत (f.) “rich woman,” अमीर लोग (plu.) “rich people.”

Word order for adjectives: Adjectives can be used predicatively (following), and attributively (preceding).

For examples:

Predicatively	Attributively
यह अच्छी किताब है । This is a good book.	यह किताब अच्छी है। This book is good.
वे अमीर लोग हैं । They are rich people.	वे लोग अमीर हैं । Those people are rich.

यह होशियार लड़का है। He is an intelligent boy.	यह लड़का होशियार है। This boy is intelligent.
---	--

Use of -सा with adjectives

In Hindi, -सा is used with adjectives to add extra meaning.

(a) Adjective + सा: It adds “looking, seeming.”

For example:

- मोटा सा आदमी “fat looking man.”
- अच्छी सी चाय “seemingly good tea.”
- पागल से बच्चे “seemingly crazy children.”

(b) Quantitative Adjective + सा:

- बहुत सा “a great deal.”
- थोड़ा सा “just a little.”

Activities

रंगों के नाम “Names of Colors”

Please read the following adjectives and decide whether the adjective is marked or unmarked adjective.

Hindi	English	Marked/Unmarked
काला	Black	
नीला	Blue	
भूरा	Brown	
धूसर	Gray	
हरा	Green	
नारंगी	Orange	
बैंगनी	Purple	
लाल	Red	
सफ़ेद	White	
पीला	Yellow	

Adjectives of Quality

Please read the following adjectives and decide whether the adjective is marked or unmarked adjective. Please also make a sentence with each adjective.

Hindi	English	Marked/Unmarked	Sentence
अच्छा	Good		

बुरा	Bad		
हल्का	Lite		
भारी	Heavy		
अँधेरा	Dark		
साफ़	Clean		
गंदा	Dirty		
आसान	Easy		
कठिन	Hard		
सस्ता	Cheap		
महँगा	Expensive		
नया	New (thing)		
पुराना	Old (thing)		
सही	Right		
ग़लत	Wrong		
मजबूत	Strong		
कमज़ोर	Weak		
बूढ़ा	Old (person)		
जवान	Young		

Record your sentences here and share with your friends/teacher

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=835>

Please choose the correct form of adjective of the following noun.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=835>

धन्यवाद !

3.6: Apostrophe "S" ('s) in Hindi

Apostrophe “S” Video

Instructor Video: Apostrophe s ('s)

In Hindi, genitive case/apostrophe s ('s) is expressed by a postposition का (kaa). In English, we can say “car of Ram,” and “Ram’s car” which mean the same thing. In Hindi, phrase like “car of Ram” is not possible. Hence, phrase like “Ram’s car” is used to express both kinds of phrases.

The postposition का (kaa) comes after nouns/pronouns, and it changes them from nouns to adjectives. का also changes its form according to number and gender of the following noun.

For examples:

- राम का घर (m.) = Ram’s home/ home of Ram
- राम की गाड़ी (f.) = Ram’s car/ car of Ram
- राम के दोस्त (plu.) = Ram’s friends/ friends of Ram
- सीता का कमरा (m.) = Sita’s room/ room of Sita
- सीता की किताब (f.) = Sita’s book/ book of Sita
- सीता के बच्चे (plu.) = Sita’s children/ children of Sita

When का comes after a noun/pronoun then that noun/pronoun changes in oblique case (see chapter 4 for oblique case in details).

For examples

- लड़के का भाई (m.) = boy’s brother/ brother of a boy
- लड़के की बहन (f.) = boy’s sister/ sister of a boy
- लड़के के कपड़े (plu.) boy’s clothes/ clothes of a boy
- कमरे का दरवाज़ा (m.) = room’s door/ door of a room
- कमरे की खिड़की (f.) = room’s window/ window of a room
- कमरे के परदे (plu.) = room’s curtains/ curtains of a room

Note: In above examples, लड़के and कमरे are in oblique form. They are not in the plural form, although the oblique and plural form of लड़का and कमरा look alike.

Activity

Please fill in the blanks with the correct form of का.

Noun	का/की/के	Noun	English
कमरे		परदे (m. plu.)	room’s curtains
कमरे		दरवाज़ा (m. sing.)	room’s door
कमरे		खिड़कियाँ (f. plu.)	room’s windows
ऋषि		भाई (m. sing.)	Rishi’s brother
ऋषि		बहन (f. sing.)	Rishi’s sister
ऋषि		पिता जी (m. sing./hon)	Rishi’s father

ऋषि		खिलौने (<i>m. plu.</i>)	Rishi's toys
शिल्पा		पति (<i>m. sing./hon</i>)	Shilpaa's husband
शिल्पा		सास (<i>f. sing.</i>)	Shilpaa's mother-in-law
शिल्पा		ननदें (<i>f. plu.</i>)	Shilpaa's sisters-in-law
शिल्पा		बच्चे (<i>m. plu.</i>)	Shilpaa's children
शिल्पा		ससुर (<i>m. sing./hon</i>)	Shilpaa's father-in-law

Pronouns with का/की/के

Possessive pronoun/adjective is formed by adding का/की/के with personal pronouns. These pronouns change in oblique forms as shown in a table below.

Table: List of possessive pronouns/adjective				
English	Hindi	+ का/की/के	Hindi	English
I	मैं	+ का/की/के	मेरा / मेरी / मेरे	My
We	हम	+ का/की/के	हमारा / हमारी / हमारे	Our
You	तू	+ का/की/के	तेरा / तेरी / तेरे	Your
You	तुम	+ का/की/के	तुम्हारा / तुम्हारी / तुम्हारे	Your
You	आप	+ का/की/के	आपका / आपकी / आपके	Your
S/he (near)	यह	+ का/की/के	इसका / इसकी / इसके	His/her
S/he (far)	वह	+ का/की/के	उसका / उसकी / उसके	His/her
They (near)	ये	+ का/की/के	इनका / इनकी / इनके	Their
They (far)	वे	+ का/की/के	उनका / उनकी / उनके	Their
Who (Singular)	कौन	+ का/की/के	किसका / किसकी / किसके	Whose
Who (plural)	किन	+ का/की/के	किनका / किनकी / किनके	Whose

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1303>

धन्यवाद !

3.7: Degree of Adjectives

Degree of Adjectives Video

Instructor Video: Degree of Adjectives

In Hindi, there are three degrees of adjective: (a) positive, (b) comparative, and (c) superlative. For comparative X से se is used, where X is a noun with whom/which comparison is being done. For superlative degree, सबसे sabse is used.

For examples:

Adjective	Positive	Comparative	Superlative
बड़ा Big	शिकागो बड़ा शहर है। Chicago is a big city.	शिकागो लॉसिंग से बड़ा है। Chicago is bigger than Lansing	शिकागो सबसे बड़ा शहर है। Chicago is the biggest city.
लंबा Tall	मैं लंबा हूँ। I am tall.	मैं अपने भाई से लंबा हूँ। I am taller than my brother.	मैं सबसे लंबा हूँ। I am the tallest.
होशियार Intelligent	मेरी बहन होशियार है। My sister is intelligent.	मेरी बहन मुझ से होशियार है। My sister is more intelligent than me.	मेरी बहन सबसे होशियार है। My sister is the most intelligent.
महंगा expensive	कमीज़ महँगी है। Shirt is expensive.	कमीज़ पजामे से महँगी है। Shirt is more expensive than pajama.	कमीज़ सबसे महँगी है। Shirt is the most expensive.
सुन्दर Beautiful	यह तस्वीर सुन्दर है। This picture is beautiful.	यह तस्वीर उस से सुन्दर है। This picture is more beautiful than that.	यह तस्वीर सबसे सुन्दर है। This picture is the most beautiful.

Use of कुछ/ज़रा “a little” and ज़्यादा/काफ़ी “a lot”

In comparative sentences, कुछ/ज़रा and ज़्यादा/काफ़ी are used to further emphasize the meaning.

For example:

- यह किताब उस किताब से कुछ/ज़रा मोटी है। This book is a little thicker than that book
- यह कमरा उस कमरे से कुछ/ज़रा बड़ा है। This room is a little bigger than that room.
- यह किताब उस किताब से ज़्यादा/काफ़ी मोटी है। This book is a lot thicker than that book.
- यह कमरा उस कमरे से ज़्यादा/काफ़ी बड़ा है। This room is a lot bigger than that room.

Activities

By using comparative and superlative degrees of adjectives, please describe your family members in 10-15 sentences. After

writing, please audio-record yours sentences and share it with your friends/teacher.

For example: मेरा भाई मुझे से लंबा है | मेरे पिता जी मेरे भाई से लंबे हैं | मेरे पिता जी सबसे लंबे हैं | मैं अपने भाई से मोटा हूँ | मेरे पिता जी सबसे मोटे हैं |

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1308>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [3.7: Degree of Adjectives](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

3.8: "Wh-" Question/Interrogative Sentence

“Wh-“ Questions Video

Instructor's Video: [Wh Question Sentences](#)

Hindi	English	Uses
क्या	What	To find out the object of a verb
कौन	Who	To find out the subject (human) of a verb
किसको	Whom	To find out beneficiary in a sentence
किसका / किसकी / किसके	Whose	For possession
कौन सा / सी / से	Which	To select one
कब	When	For time
कहाँ	Where	For place
क्यों	Why	For reason
कैसा / कैसी / कैसे	How	For situation/condition and quality
कितना/ कितनी / कितने	How many/much	For quantity

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1312>

Formation of “Wh-” Question Sentences

In Hindi, to form a wh-question sentence, we should simply replace that part of a sentence by an appropriate question word.

For example:

- यह एक फल है। This is a fruit. — यह क्या है ? What is this?
- राकेश मेरा भाई है। Rakesh is my brother — कौन मेरा भाई है ? Who is my brother?
- मैं भारत से हूँ। I am from India. — मैं कहाँ से हूँ ? Where am I from?
- राकेश मेरा भाई है। Rakesh is my brother. — राकेश किसका भाई है ? Whose brother is Rakesh?
- तुम ठीक हो। You are okay. — तुम कैसे हो ? How are you?
- यहाँ दस विद्यार्थी हैं। Ten students are here. — यहाँ कितने विद्यार्थी हैं ? How many students are here?

Activity

Please change the following positive sentences into wh-question/interrogative sentences.

	Positive Sentences	Wh-question/Interrogative Sentence
1	मेरा नाम रजनी है।	
2	मेरी माँ का नाम कमला है।	
3	मैं उन्नीस साल की हूँ।	

4	मेरा फ़ोन नंबर 555-xxx-xxxx है।	
5	वह हिन्दुस्तान से है।	
6	यह मेरा छोटा भाई है।	
7	यहाँ पाँच किताबें हैं।	
8	मैं अच्छी हूँ।	
9	यह एक बड़ा शहर है।	
10	भारत की राजधानी दिल्ली है।	

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1312>

Please read the following conversation and click on the question words.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1312>

Please match the followings

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1312>

Please choose the correct response of the following prompts

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1312>

धन्यवाद !

3.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

Cultural Notes

	Topic	Explanation
	श्री and श्रीमती	In Hindi we use श्री <i>shree</i> for Mr, and श्रीमती <i>shreematii</i> for Mrs. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• श्री पंकज सिंह – Mr. Pankaj Singh.• श्रीमती पूजा सिंह – Mrs. Puja Singh
1	Family	Traditionally in India, a family consists of दादा-दादी Grand-parents), माँ-पिता (parents), भाई-बहन (brother-sister), चाचा-चाची (uncle-aunt), बुआ (father's sister), चचेरे भाई-बहन (cousins).
2	Decision making	Traditionally in India, male members of the family make all the decisions. However, as women are becoming more empowered, it is not unusual to see their participation in decision making these days.
3	After marriage	After marriage, bride goes to groom's family. She has to stay with his family. It is considered bad if bride demands to live separately specially in the same village/city.
4	You gained weight.	"You gained weight" is considered an insult in America. But, it can be considered as a compliment in India. It simply means that you have been eating well and taking care of yourself. It is also a sign of your financial well-being.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

- [List of Adjectives](#)
- [Rathore Family – Introduction](#)
- [Rajawat Family – Introduction](#)
- [Pareek Family – Introduction](#)
- [Friendship](#)

धन्यवाद!

4: DESCRIBING PLACES

- 4.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 3
- 4.2: Reading/Listening 1- ऋतिक का घर
- 4.3: Reading/Listening 2- ऋतिक का कमरा
- 4.4: Reading/Listening 2- पीटर का शहर
- 4.5: Study Abroad
- 4.6: Post-positions
- 4.7: Oblique Case
- 4.8: "There" Construction
- 4.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

4.1: Review Concepts from Chapter 3

Vocabulary

Please match the following and then form a sentence with each word describing your family. Please write/record your sentences.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=841>

Speaking

Please audio-record your sentences here

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=841>

Grammar Review

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=841>

Reading and Listening Comprehension

Please read/listen to the following text.

नमस्ते,

मेरा नाम मोहन है। मैं घर का सबसे बड़ा बेटा हूँ। मेरे पिता जी की उम्र पचास साल है। मेरी माँ उन्यास साल की हैं। मेरा छोटा भाई बीस साल का है, और मेरी बहन अठारह साल की है। मेरा छोटा भाई छे फूट का है, मेरे पिता जी पांच फूट आठ इंच के हैं, और मैं पांच फूट पांच इंच का हूँ। मेरी माँ और बहन दोनों पांच फूट चार इंच की हैं। मेरे घर में, सबसे सुन्दर मेरी बहन है। मेरा भाई सबसे होशियार है। मेरे पिता जी सबसे मजबूत हैं। मैं सबसे मेहनती हूँ। मेरी माँ सबसे धार्मिक हैं। मेरी बहन मुझ से ज़्यादा धार्मिक है।

यह मेरा छोटा परिवार है।

धन्यवाद !

Listening

मोहन का परिवार

Comprehension Test

Please respond to the following questions in Hindi.

	Hindi	English	Your response
1	मोहन के परिवार में, सबसे बड़ा बेटा कौन है?	In Mohan's family, who is the eldest son?	
2	उम्र में, सबसे बड़ा कौन है?	In age, who is the oldest?	

3	परिवार में, सबसे लंबा कौन है ?	In family, who is the tallest?	
4	परिवार में, सबसे सुन्दर कौन है ?	In family, who is the most beautiful?	
5	परिवार में, सबसे मजबूत कौन है ?	In family, who is the strongest?	
6	परिवार में, सबसे मेहनती कौन है ?	In family, who is the most hard-working?	
7	परिवार में, सबसे होशियार कौन है ?	In family, who is the most intelligent?	
8	परिवार में, सबसे धार्मिक कौन है ?	In family, who is the most religious?	
9	परिवार में, मोहन से ज़्यादा धार्मिक कौन है ?	In family, who is more religious than Mohan ?	

धन्यवाद !

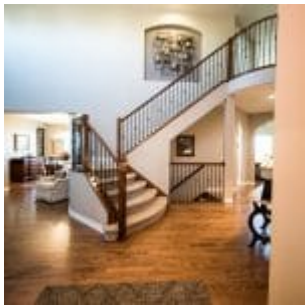
4.2: Reading/Listening 1- ऋतिक का घर

ऋतिक का घर “Hritik’s Home”



Vocabulary

		
दरवाज़ा <i>n.m.</i> door	बैठक <i>n.m.</i> Living room	रसोई <i>n.f.</i> Kitchen
		
गलियारा <i>n.m.</i> Corridor/Hallway	पढ़ाई का कमरा <i>n.m.</i> Study room	फ़र्श <i>n.m.</i> Floor

		
सीढ़ी <i>n.f.</i> Staircase	सोने का कमरा <i>n.m.</i> Bedroom	खिड़की <i>n.f.</i> Window
		
छत <i>n.m.</i> Roof	छज्जा <i>n.m.</i> Balcony	बगीचा <i>n.m.</i> Garden
		
शौचालय <i>n.m.</i> Toilet	स्नानघर <i>n.m.</i> Shower/Bathroom	भोजन कक्ष (खाने का कमरा) <i>n.m.</i> dining room

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

Reading/Listening

Context: Vidya is visiting Hritik's home first time. Hritik is giving Vidya a tour of his home.

Pre-reading activities:

- (a) Please collect photos of the several parts of your home and then on the back of your each photo, please write its name in Hindi. It should look like a flash-card but with photos.
- (b) Please think about your home and your friends' home and make a list of the parts of home that their homes have and your home does not have and vice-versa.

Reading

	Hindi	English
	दरवाज़े की घंटी बजती है और ऋतिक दरवाज़ा खोलता है।	Door-bell rings and Hritik opens the door.
ऋतिक:	ओ हो ! विद्या है। नमस्ते, क्या हाल है ?	Oho! It is Vidya. Hello, how are you?
विद्या:	नमस्ते, सब ठीक है। तुम कैसे हो?	Hello, All is well. How are you?
ऋतिक:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ। आओ, अन्दर आओ।	I am okay too. come, come inside.
विद्या:	धन्यवाद, तुम्हारा घर बहुत सुन्दर है।	Thanks, your home is very beautiful.
ऋतिक:	शुक्रिया, चलो, मैं तुम्हें पूरा घर दिखाता हूँ।	Thanks, Let's go, I will show you my whole house.
विद्या:	ठीक है, चलो।	Okay, Let's go.
ऋतिक:	यह हमारे घर का दरवाज़ा है। उसके बाद एक गलियारा है। गलियारे के बाद एक और दरवाज़ा है। उस दरवाज़े के बाद, हमारा बैठक है। बैठक के बायीं तरफ हमारी रसोई, और खाने का कमरा है। बैठक के दायीं तरफ, पढ़ने का कमरा, पूजा घर, और अतिथी का कमरा भी है। बैठक में ही, एक सीढ़ी है।	This is the door of our house. After that there is a corridor. After the corridor, there is another door. After that door, there is our living room. On the left side of the living room, there is our kitchen and dinning room. On the right side of the living room, there is a study room, worship room, and a guest room too. In the living room itself, there is a staircase.
विद्या:	और ऊपर की मंज़िल पर क्या-क्या हैं ?	And what are there on the top floor?
ऋतिक:	ऊपर की मंज़िल पर, तीन सोने के कमरे हैं। हर कमरे में, एक-एक शौचालय और स्नानघर है। ऊपर की मंज़िल पर, एक छज्जा भी है।	On the top floor, there are three bedrooms. In each room, there is a toilet and shower. There is a balcony too on the top floor.
विद्या:	क्या नीचे की मंज़िल पर कोई शौचालय नहीं है ?	Is there no toilet on the bottom floor?
ऋतिक:	हाँ, एक शौचालय और स्नानघर नीचे की मंज़िल पर भी है।	Yes, There is one toilet and shower at the bottom floor too.
विद्या:	ऋतिक, तुम्हारा घर बहुत अच्छा, साफ़ और हवादार भी है। क्या तुम्हारे घर में कोई बगीचा है ?	Hritik, your house is very good, clean and airy too. Is there any garden in your house?
ऋतिक:	घर के पीछे, एक छोटा सा बगीचा भी है। वह मेरी माँ की सबसे पसंदीदा जगह है।	Behind the house, there is a small garden. This is my mother's favorite place.
विद्या:	अरे वाह ! मुझे भी बगीचा बहुत पसंद है। और तुम्हारा कमरा कहाँ है ?	O wao! I, too, like garden a lot. And where is your room?
ऋतिक:	मेरा कमरा ऊपर की मंज़िल पर है। मेरा कमरा अभी गंदा है। मैं तुम्हें अपना कमरा बाद में दिखाऊंगा।	My room is on the top floor. Right now, my room is dirty. I will show you my room later.
विद्या:	ठीक है।	Okay.

Listening

ऋतिक का घर

True-False:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

Drawing: Based on the above description of Hritik's house, please draw a picture of the bottom floor of Hritik's house.

Writing/Speaking

As you read how Hritik gave tour of his house to Vidya. Now, it is your turn to describe your home in 15-20 sentences. Please write them on the paper first and then audio-record yourself. Alternatively, you can also video-record describing your home.

Record yourself here:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=847>

धन्यवाद!

4.3: Reading/Listening 2- ऋतिक का कमरा

ऋतिक का कमरा “Hritik’s Room”



Vocabulary

		
दरी <i>n.f.</i> Rug	बिस्तर <i>n.m.</i> Bed	कुर्सी <i>n.f.</i> Chair
		
मेज़ <i>n.f.</i> Table	सोफ़ा <i>n.m.</i> Sofa	अलमारी <i>n.f.</i> Wardrobe

		
किताब <i>n.f.</i> Book	पौधा <i>n.m.</i> Plant	तस्वीर <i>n.f.</i> Picture
		
परदा <i>n.m.</i> Curtain	बत्ती <i>n.f.</i> Light bulb	पंखा <i>n.m.</i> Fan
		
फूलदान/ गुलदस्ता <i>n.m.</i> Flower vase	घड़ी <i>n.f.</i> clock/watch	आईना <i>n.f.</i> Mirror

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=851>

Reading/Listening

Context: Vidya comes back to Hritik's home. This time, Hritik is showing her his room.

Pre-Reading Activities

Please collect photos of the several things in your room, then on the back of your each photo, please write its name in Hindi. It should look like a flash-card but with photos.

Reading

	Hindi	English
ऋतिक:	आओ विद्या, आज, मैं तुम्हें अपना कमरा दिखाता हूँ।	Come Vidya, today, I show you my room.

विद्या:	चलो ।	Let's go.
ऋतिक:	यह मेरा कमरा है । मेरे कमरे में, एक बिस्तर है, एक मेज़, एक कुर्सी और एक छोटा सोफ़ा भी है। बिस्तर के बगल में एक छोटी मेज़ है । उस मेज़ पर, एक बिजली की बत्ती, एक फूलदान और एक घड़ी भी है ।	This is my room. In my room, there is one bed, one table, one chair, and one small sofa too. On that table, there is an electric bulb, a flower vase, and one clock too.
विद्या:	पढ़ाई की मेज़ पर, क्या है ?	What are on the study table?
ऋतिक:	पढ़ाई की मेज़ पर, एक कंप्यूटर, कुछ किताबें और एक कॉफ़ी कप है ।	On the study table, there is a computer, a few books, and a coffee cup.
विद्या:	इस अलमारी में क्या है ?	What is in this almirah?
ऋतिक:	इस अलमारी में, मेरे कपड़े और जूते हैं । देखो, उस दिवार पर सुन्दर तस्वीरें हैं । दरवाज़े के पीछे एक आईना भी है ।	In this almirah, there are my clothes and shoes. Look, there are beautiful pictures on that wall. There is a mirror behind the door too.
विद्या:	तुम्हारे कमरे का परदा बहुत सुन्दर है । और लगता है कि पंखा नया है ।	The curtain of your room is very beautiful. It seems that fan is new.
ऋतिक:	जी हाँ, नया पंखा और नयी दरी भी ।	Yes, New fan and new rug too.
विद्या:	तुम्हारा कमरा बहुत बड़ा और हवादार भी है।	Your room is very big and airy too.
ऋतिक:	धन्यवाद ! क्या तुम भी मुझे अपना कमरा और घर दिखाओगी?	Thanks ! Will you also show me your room and house?
विद्या:	हाँ, ज़रूर, क्यों नहीं ?	Yes, indeed, why not?

Listening

ऋतिक का कमरा

Activity

Please make a list of at least 10 things of Hritik's room and then of your room.

	ऋतिक के कमरे में,	मेरे कमरे में,
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		
9		
10		

Drawing: Based on the above description of Hritik's room, please draw a picture Hritik's room.

Writing/Speaking

As you read how Hritik gave a description of his room to Vidya. Now, it is your turn to describe your room in 10-15 sentences.

Please write them on the paper first and then audio-record yourself. Alternatively, you can also video-record describing your room.

Record yourself here:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=851>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled 4.3: Reading/Listening 2- ऋतिक का कमरा is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by Rajiv Ranjan (Michigan State University Libraries).

4.4: Reading/Listening 2- पीटर का शहर

पीटर का शहर “Peter’s Hometown”



Vocabulary

		
सड़क <i>n.f.</i> Road	राजमार्ग <i>n.m.</i> Highway	बस अड्डा <i>n.m.</i> Bus station
		
रेलवे स्टेशन <i>n.m.</i> Railway station	हवाईअड्डा <i>n.m.</i> Airport	नदी <i>n.f.</i> River

		
तालाब <i>n.m.</i> Pond	झील <i>n.f.</i> Lake	पहाड़ <i>n.m.</i> Mountain
		
सिनेमा घर <i>n.m.</i> Cinema hall	बैंक <i>n.m.</i> Bank	मैदान <i>n.m.</i> Sports field
		
बाज़ार <i>n.m.</i> Market	दुकान <i>n.f.</i> Shop	भोजनालय <i>n.m.</i> Restaurant
		
होटल <i>n.m.</i> Hotel	भवन <i>n.m.</i> /इमारत <i>n.f.</i> Building	अस्पताल <i>n.m.</i> Hospital

		
कार्यालय <i>n.m.</i> Office	डाकघर <i>n.m.</i> Post office	पुलिस थाना <i>n.m.</i> Police station
		
चिड़ियाघर <i>n.m.</i> Zoo	पुस्तकालय <i>n.m.</i> Library	संग्रहालय <i>n.m.</i> Museum
		
पुल <i>n.m.</i> Bridge	मॉल <i>n.m.</i> Shopping mall	स्कूल/ विद्यालय <i>n.m.</i> School
		
विश्वविद्यालय <i>n.m.</i> University	कॉलेज/महाविद्यालय <i>n.m.</i> College	पेट्रोल पम्प <i>n.m.</i> Gas station

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=853>

Reading/Listening

Context: Hritik is talking to Peter about his home town “Iowa City.”

Pre-Reading Activities

Please read the following word, then write their meaning in English. After that please respond to the prompts.

	Hindi	English	Do you have this in your town/city	How many
1	विद्यालय	School	जी हाँ	5
2	महाविद्यालय			
3	विश्वविद्यालय			
4	अस्पताल			
5	डाकघर			
6	पुलिस थाना			
7	संग्रहालय			
8	नदी			
9	झील			
10	तालाब			
11	पहाड़			
12	पुस्तकालय			

Reading

	Hindi	English
पीटर:	ऋतिक भाई, आप कहाँ से हैं ?	Brother Hritik, where are you from?
ऋतिक:	मैं पटना, हिन्दुस्तान से हूँ। आप कहाँ से हैं ?	I am from Patna, India. Where are you from?
पीटर:	मैं आयोवा के एक छोटे शहर आयोवा सिटी से हूँ। पटना, बिहार की राजधानी है, न ?	I am from a small town Iowa City, Iowa. Patna is the capital of Bihar, isn't it?
ऋतिक:	जी हाँ, मैं बिहारी हूँ। आयोवा सिटी की जनसंख्या कितनी है ?	Yes, I am a Bihari. What is the population of Iowa City?
पीटर:	आयोवा सिटी में लगभग पचहतर हज़ार लोग रहते हैं। और पटना में ?	Approx 75 thousand people live in Iowa City. And in Patna?
ऋतिक:	पटना में लगभग, पचीस लाख लोग रहते हैं। शायद, आयोवा सिटी बहुत छोटा शहर है।	Approx, 2.5 million people live in Patna. Perhaps, Iowa City is a very small town.
पीटर:	हाँ, आयोवा सिटी बहुत छोटा, मगर बहुत प्यारा शहर है।	Yes, Iowa City is very small, but very lovely town.
ऋतिक:	क्या वहाँ कोई हवाई अड्डा है ?	Is there any airport there?
पीटर:	नहीं, मगर पास के शहर सीडर रैपिड्स में एक हवाई अड्डा है। आयोवा सिटी में रेलवे स्टेशन भी नहीं है। हाँ, एक बस स्टेशन है।	No, but there is an airport in near by town. Even railway station is not there in Iowa City. There is just one bus station.
ऋतिक:	आयोवा सिटी में, कितने विद्यालय, महाविद्यालय, और विश्वविद्यालय हैं।	How many schools, colleges, and universities are there in Iowa City?
पीटर:	मेरे शहर में, दो विद्यालय, एक महाविद्यालय, और एक विश्वविद्यालय है।	In my town, there are two schools, one college, and one university.
ऋतिक:	क्या आपके शहर में पुस्तकालय, संग्रहालय, सिनेमा घर, और चिड़ियाघर है ?	Is there any library, museum, cinema hall and zoo in your town?

पीटर:	जी हाँ, मेरे शहर में, दो पुस्तकालय, एक संग्रहालय, एक सिनेमाघर भी है। मगर चिड़ियाघर नहीं है।	Yes, in my town, there are two libraries, one museum, one cinema hall. But, there is no zoo.
ऋतिक:	अच्छा, क्या आयोवा सिटी में, कोई नदी, झील, तालब और पहाड़ हैं।	Okay, Is there any river, lake, pond and mountain in Iowa City?
पीटर:	मेरे शहर में, एक नदी, और कुछ तालाब हैं। वहाँ पहाड़ नहीं है। आयोवा एक कृषि प्रधान राज्य है और वहाँ बहुत समतल ज़मीन और खेत हैं।	In my town, there is a river and a few ponds. There is no mountain there. Iowa is an agriculture based state and there is a lot of even and farm land.
ऋतिक:	क्या आपके शहर में, डाकघर, और पुलिस थाना आदि हैं ?	In your town, is there a post office, and a police station, etc?
पीटर:	जी हाँ, मेरे शहर में एक डाक घर, और एक पुलिस थाना भी है। पटना में क्या-क्या है ?	Yes, In my town, there is one post office, and one police station too. What are there in Patna?
ऋतिक:	पटना के बारे में, हम बाद में बात करें। अब क्लास का समय है।	Let's talk about Patna later. Now, it is time for class.
पीटर:	ठीक है, कोई बात नहीं।	Okay, No problem.

Listening

पीटर का शहर

Activities

- (a) Please write 10-15 sentences describing your own home town.
- (b) Based on above conversation, please write 10 sentences in Hindi describing Iowa City.
- (c) Imagine that you are Peter. You are planning to ask Hritik at least 10 questions about Patna in Hindi. Please make a list of your questions.

	पटना के बारे में सवाल "Questions about Patna"
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	

- (d) After gathering the information either from any friend from Patna/India or internet, please write 10-15 sentences about Patna. After writing, please audio-record your self here.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=853>

धन्यवाद !

4.5: Study Abroad

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

Reading

Context: In chapter 3. You read a letter from Sita (Jen's host mother from India) to Jen in which she describes her family. In this chapter, Jen is writing a letter back to Sita describing her family and her city.

प्रिय मेज़बान माँ,

नमस्ते !

आपकी चिट्ठी मिली। आपके परिवार के बारे में जानकर बहुत खुशी हुई। इस पत्र में, मैं आपको अपने परिवार और शहर के बारे में बताऊँगी।

मेरा एक छोटा परिवार है और हम सब न्यू यॉर्क शहर में रहते हैं। मेरा एक छोटा भाई है। वह एक सरकारी विद्यालय में पढ़ता है। मेरे पिता जी और माँ दोनों विश्वविद्यालय में पढ़ाते हैं। मेरी एक पालतू बिल्ली भी है। उसका नाम गोरी है।

न्यू यॉर्क एक बहुत बड़ा शहर है। यह अमेरिका की आर्थिक राजधानी है। इस शहर में, बहुत सारे सरकारी और गैर-सरकारी कार्यालय हैं। यहाँ दो बड़े विश्वविद्यालय और कई महाविद्यालय, और विद्यालय हैं। इस शहर में, दुनिया के हर देश के लोग रहते हैं। यहाँ बहुत हिन्दुस्तानी लोग भी हैं। न्यू यॉर्क में, एक नदी है। यहाँ किसी भी बड़े शहर की तरह, हर चीज़ है मगर प्राकृतिक सुन्दरता ज़्यादा नहीं है।

मैं अगले हफ़्ते भारत आ रही हूँ। जब हम मिलेंगे तब मैं आपको अपने शहर के बारे में और भी बताऊँगी।

आपकी बेटी,

जेन

Listening

जेन का पत्र

Activities

(a) Make a sentence with each word given below.

	Hindi	English	Sentence
1	मेज़बान <i>n.m.</i>	Host	
2	चिट्ठी <i>n.f.</i>	Letter	
3	दोनों <i>adj.</i>	Both	
4	सरकारी <i>adj.</i>	Governmental	
5	शहर <i>n.m.</i>	Town	

(b) Click on all the post-positions in the text below. (Look at the grammar section before doing this activity)

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1190>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [4.5: Study Abroad](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) ([Michigan State University Libraries](#)).

4.6: Post-positions

Post-Positions Video

Instructor Video: [Post-positions](#)

English has a class of words called “prepositions”. Prepositions are the words that precede a phrase and indicate a relationship between the phrase and another word in the sentence. Hindi has a similar class of words known as “post-positions”. As the name implies, post-positions come before the word they modify. In other respects, however, they are very similar to prepositions in English.

Simple Post-positions

Simple post-positions consist of a single word.

Examples

Post-position	English	Examples	
		Hindi	English
में	in	मेरे शहर में	In my town
पर	on,	मेज़ पर	On a table
	at	घर पर	At home
से	from	भारत से	from India
	by	ट्रेन से	by train
	with	कलम से	with a pen
	since	बचपन से	since childhood
का/की/ के	's	सोने का कमरा घर की खिड़की घर के लोग	bed room House's window (window of a house) House's people (people of a house)
को	to	लड़के को आप को	to a boy to you

Compound Post-positions

Hindi has many compound post-positions as well. Compound post-positions consist of two or more words. Most compound post-positions begin with the post-position के, की, or से.

Examples

Post-position	English	Examples	
		Hindi	English
x के लिये	<i>for x</i>	घर के लिये	For house
x के बारे में	<i>about x</i>	शहर के बारे में	About town
x की वजह से / के कारण	<i>because of x</i>	आप की वजह से / के कारण	Because of you
x से दूर	<i>far from x</i>	घर से दूर	far from home
x के नज़दीक / पास	<i>near x</i>	घर के नज़दीक / पास	near home
x से / के पहले	<i>before x</i>	स्कूल से / के पहले	before school
x के बाहर	<i>outside x</i>	घर के बाहर	outside home
x के अंदर	<i>inside the x</i>	घर के अंदर	inside the home
x के बाद	<i>after x</i>	स्कूल के बाद	after school
x के ऊपर	<i>above/ on/ on top of x</i>	घर के ऊपर	above/ on/ on top of home
x के नीचे	<i>under/ beneath/ below x</i>	छत के नीचे	under/ beneath/ below roof
x की तरफ़	<i>towards x</i>	आप की तरफ़	towards you
x के सामने	<i>in front of x</i>	आप के सामने	in front of you
x के पीछे	<i>behind x</i>	आप के पीछे	behind you
x के आगे	<i>ahead of x</i>	आप के आगे	ahead of you
x के साथ	<i>together with/ with/ along with x</i>	आप के साथ	together with/ with/ along with you
x और y के बीच	<i>between x and y</i>	स्कूल और घर के बीच	between school and home

Test yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=855>

Fill in the blanks with suitable post-position.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=855>

धन्यवाद !

4.7: Oblique Case

Oblique Case Video

Instructor Video: [Oblique Case](#)

Case is a property of a word which indicates its uses within a phrase or a sentence. In Hindi, based on form, there are two types of case: (a) Direct case, and (b) Oblique case.

(a) Direct Case: The direct case is used with a nominal phrase is not followed by a post-position.

(b) Oblique Case: The oblique case is used with a nominal phrase is followed by a post-position.

Nouns, pronouns, adjectives and verbs change in oblique case form when followed by a post-position.

Note: Please note that when a nouns, pronouns, adjectives and verbs are in oblique case form, they do not change their meanings. It is just a grammatical form which has nothing to do with the meaning of those words. This is why, typically, Hindi learners struggle to acquire this very crucial but meaningless feature of Hindi language.

Oblique Noun

Masculine Singular Oblique Nouns

Only singular masculine nouns that ends in आ changes into ए in oblique case form. Others (singular masculine that does not end in आ and singular feminine) do not change.

For Examples:

- लड़का — लड़के का नाम “boy’s name.” (आ changes into ए)
- आदमी — आदमी का नाम “man’s name” (No change)

Feminine Singular Oblique Nouns

When a feminine singular noun is followed by any post-position, it does not change its form.

For Examples:

- लड़की — लड़की का नाम “girl’s name” (No change)
- किताब — किताब का नाम “Book’s name” (No change)

Plural Oblique Nouns

All plural nouns (masculine and feminine) change into ओं or यों in their oblique case forms.

For Examples:

- लड़के — लड़कों के नाम “Boys’ names”
- शहर — शहरों के नाम “Cities’ names”
- लड़कियाँ — लड़कियों के नाम “Girls’ names”
- किताबें — किताबों के नाम “books’ name”

Oblique Nouns Summary

	Masculine	Feminine
--	-----------	----------

Singular	Type I	Type II	Type I	Type II
	-आ changes in -ए	No change	No change	No change
	लड़का - लड़के का कमरा - कमरे में	घर - घर का मकान - मकान में	लड़की - लड़की को खिड़की - खिड़की पर	किताब - किताब में मेज़ - मेज़ पर
Plural	Type I	Type II	Type I	Type II
	All masculine and feminine plural nouns change into ओं or यों			
	लड़के - लड़कों को कमरे - कमरों में	घर - घरों का मकान - मकानों में	लड़कियाँ - लड़कियों को खिड़कियाँ - खिड़कियों पर	किताबें - किताबों में मेजें - मेजों पर

Oblique Adjectives

As we know Hindi adjectives can be classified into marked and unmarked adjectives.

Marked adjective (that ends in आ) changes in ए for oblique adjective form.

For Examples:

- अच्छा - अच्छा लड़का --- अच्छे लड़के का नाम "good boy's name"
- मीठा - मीठा फल - मीठे फलों में "In sweet fruits"

Unmarked adjective (that does not end in आ) does not change in oblique adjective form.

For Examples:

- सुन्दर - सुन्दर लड़की - सुन्दर लड़की का नाम "beautiful girl's name" (No change)
- हवादार - हवादार कमरा - हवादार कमरे में "In a airy room" (No change)

Summary of Oblique Adjectives

	Oblique Adjectives	
	Marked	Unmarked
Rules	-आ changes in -ए	No change
Examples	अच्छा - अच्छा लड़का - अच्छे लड़के का मीठा - मीठा फल - मीठे फलों में	सुन्दर - सुन्दर लड़की - सुन्दर लड़की का नाम हवादार - हवादार कमरा - हवादार कमरे में

Oblique Verbs

We will learn more about verb in the next chapters (5 and 6). Here, please know that all the verbs in Hindi end in -आ, to be specific -ना.

For examples:

- खाना "To eat"
- पढ़ना "To read"
- सोना "To sleep"

Rule to change direct verb in oblique verb: -आ changes in -ए

For Examples:

- खाना “to eat” – खाने के लिए “in order to eat/ to eat.”
- पढ़ना “to read” – पढ़ने से “by reading.”
- सोना “to sleep” – सोने से पहले “before sleeping.”

Oblique Pronouns

Hindi pronouns also change into oblique form when followed by a post-position.

Pronouns in English	Pronouns in Hindi		Examples of pronouns with post-position	
	Direct	Oblique	Pronouns + को	Pronouns + से
I	मैं	मुझ	मुझे / मुझको	मुझ से
We	हम	हम	हमें / हमको	हम से
You	तू	तुझ	तुझे / तुझ को	तुझ से
You	तुम	तुम	तुम्हें / तुम को	तुम से
You	आप	आप	आप को	आप से
S/he (near)	यह	इस	इसको	इससे
S/he (far)	वह	उस	उसको	उससे
They (near)	ये	इन	इनको	इनसे
They (far)	वे	उन	उनको	उनसे
Who (Sing.)	कौन	किस	किसको	किससे
Who (Plu.)	कौन	किन	किनको	किनसे
What (Sing.)	क्या	किस	किसको	किससे
What (Plu.)	क्या	किन	किनको	किनसे

Test Yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1200>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1200>

धन्यवाद !

4.8: "There" Construction

"There" Construction Video

Instructor Video: [There Construction](#)

English is not a pro-drop language, in other words, you cannot have an English sentence in which subject is not available. This's why, we need dummy subjects like 'there' and 'it' in English.

For examples:

- There is a car.
- There are ten students.

Unlike English though, Hindi is a pro-drop language hence subject can be dropped, or it is not needed in 'there' or 'it' sentences. In these sentences, the verb agrees with the object.

For Examples:

1.	English	In my town, there is a museum.
	Hindi Word order	My town in + (there) + a museum + is
	Hindi	मेरे शहर में (___) एक संग्रहालय है।
2.	English	In my room, there are ten books.
	Hindi Word order	My room in + (there) + ten books + are
	Hindi	मेरे कमरे में (___) दस किताबें हैं।
3.	English	There is a computer on my desk.
	Hindi Word order	My desk on + (there) + a computer + is
	Hindi	मेरी मेज़ पर (___) एक कंप्यूटर है।

Activities

With "there construction," please form five sentences for describing places given below.

Place		Sentences
मेरी रसोई में, In my kitchen,	1	Example: मेरी रसोई में एक चूल्हा है "There is a stove in my kitchen."
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
मेरे बैठक में, In my living room,	1	
	2	
	3	

	4	
	5	
मेरे थैले में, In my bag,	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	
मेरे स्कूल में, In my school,	1	
	2	
	3	
	4	
	5	

धन्यवाद!

4.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1	Indian City/Town	Typically, Indian and South Asian cities and towns are very crowded and houses do not have front and back lawns. Indian villages have comparatively more open space. Indian is the 2nd largest populated country of the world with very dense population.
2	Transportation	Public transportation is easily available in India and South Asian cities. Though, all the buses, trains and airports are very crowded and can be intimidating for someone new.
3	Private space	Given that Indian family up to three generation live in one house, there is not much private/personal space.
4	Bathroom/Toilet	In a typical Indian houses, bathroom and toilet are not in the same room like America. They are built separately. However, in a bigger cities, and in apartment complexes, you will find bathroom and toilet in one space. Please also note that Indian toilet is squatting toilet.
5	Worship room	Typically, in a bigger Hindu houses in India, there would be a separate room called पूजा घर "worship room."
6	Shoes NOT in the house	Typically, Indians do not allow shoes in the house. Everyone takes off shoes out-side the house in corridor or near the entry door.
7	Kitchen	Indian houses/apartment do not have open kitchen attached with the living room like in American houses/apartments. Indian kitchens are not visible for the guests. As a guest you should ask permission to enter in your host kitchen.
8	Market	<p>In India and South Asia, a smaller markets are everywhere. You can find a smaller grocery stores in your own alley. Every neighborhood has all small stores for regularly used things such as: medical stores, grocery, mobile phone stores, vegetable and fruit stores, etc.</p> <p>However, in village area, it not the case so much and typically there is a weekly village market. Villagers also visit near/local town/cities for shopping.</p>

Extra/Optional Online Materials

[Ganeshpura – A village](#)

[Jaipur – Introduction](#)

[Pareek family – Our Home](#)

[Rajawat Family – Vegetable Market](#)

[Rajawat Family – Ganesh Temple](#)

[Pareek Family – Kitchen](#)

Thanks! धन्यवाद!

This page titled [4.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan \(Michigan State University Libraries\)](#).

5: EXPRESSING LIKES, DISLIKES, NEEDS, AND POSSESSION

5.1: Review of Chapter 4

5.2: Reading/Listening 1- फल और सब्ज़ी की दुकान पर

5.3: Reading/Listening 2- भोजनालय में

5.4: Study Abroad

5.5: Verb "To be" in the Past Tense

5.6: Subject with को

5.7: चाहिए "Need"

5.8: Expressing Possession in Hindi

5.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

5.1: Review of Chapter 4

Vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=867>

Grammar

Please choose the correct option. Please pay extra attention to the oblique forms in Hindi phrases.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=867>

Reading



मेरा स्कूल

मेरे स्कूल का नाम लांसिंग हाई स्कूल है। मेरे स्कूल में, लगभग एक सौ कमरे हैं। मेरे स्कूल में, एक बगीचा और दो खेल के मैदान हैं। मेरे स्कूल में एक प्रयोगशाला और एक सभागार भी है। मेरे स्कूल में, लगभग बारह सौ छात्र और छात्रायाँ हैं। मेरे स्कूल में, लगभग बीस अध्यापक हैं। मेरे प्रधानाचार्य को अनुशासन बहुत पसंद है। स्कूल में, सभी विषय पढ़ाई जाती है। मेरा स्कूल, शहर से दूर है। मैं हर दिन, साइकिल से स्कूल जाता हूँ।

आप भी मुझे अपने स्कूल के बारे में बताइये।

धन्यवाद !

Listening

Listening Activity

Check Your Comprehension

Based on the above reading and listening, please answer the following questions.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=867>

Speaking

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=867>

धन्यवाद!

This page titled [5.1: Review of Chapter 4](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

5.2: Reading/Listening 1- फल और सब्ज़ी की दुकान पर

फल और सब्ज़ी की दुकान पर



Vocabulary

Hindi	Grammatical Categories	English
भईया	<i>n.m</i>	Elder brother
चाहिए	<i>v.i.</i>	need
x के पास	<i>phrase</i>	X has
कौन-कौन सी	<i>phrase</i>	What all
सब्ज़ी	<i>n.f</i>	Vegetable
आलू	<i>n.m</i>	Potato
प्याज	<i>n.m</i>	Onion
टमाटर	<i>n.m</i>	Tomato
गोभी	<i>n.f</i>	Cauliflower
मूली	<i>n.f.</i>	Radish
पालक	<i>n.m.</i>	Spinach
करेला	<i>n.m.</i>	Bitter gourd
बैंगन	<i>n.m</i>	Eggplant
मटर	<i>n.m</i>	Pea
माफ़ कीजिये	<i>phrase</i>	Sorry

मगर	<i>conj.</i>	If
आजकल	<i>adv</i>	These days
मौसम	<i>n.m.</i>	Weather
इसलिए	<i>conj</i>	Therefore
कोई बात नहीं	<i>phrase</i>	No worries
कितने का	<i>phrase</i>	How much
x को लगता है कि	<i>phrase</i>	X feels that
महँगा	<i>adj.</i>	Expensive
बहुत	<i>adv.</i>	Very
दाम	<i>n.m.</i>	Cost
आयात	<i>n.m.</i>	Import
राज्य	<i>n.m.</i>	State
बाज़ार	<i>n.m.</i>	Market
x कहाँ मिलेगा ?	<i>phrase</i>	Where will I get X?
आधा	<i>adj.</i>	Half
फल	<i>n.m.</i>	Fruit
दर्जन	<i>adj.</i>	Dozen
केला	<i>n.m.</i>	Banana
सेब	<i>n.m.</i>	Apple

Test yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=876>

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please review the vocabulary of fruits and vegetables from previous chapter.
- (b) Please make a list of your favorite fruits and vegetables.
- (c) Please ask your friends about their favorite fruits and vegetable.

Reading

फल और सब्ज़ी की दुकान पर

Context: Vidya is in a market shopping for fruits and vegetables.

विद्या:	नमस्ते भईया	Hello
दुकानदार:	जी नमस्ते, आपको क्या चाहिए ?	Yes, What do you want?
विद्या:	आपके पास कौन-कौन सी सब्ज़ियाँ हैं?	What types of vegetables do you have?

दुकानदार:	मेरे पास आलू, टमाटर, प्याज, गोभी, मूली, पालक, और करेला आदि सब्जियाँ हैं।	I have potato, tomato, onion, cauliflower, radish, spinach, and bitter gourd, etc.
विद्या:	मुझे करेला और मूली पसंद नहीं। क्या आपके पास बैंगन और मटर है। मुझे मटर बहुत पसंद है।	I do not like bitter-gourd and radish. Do you have eggplant and peas. I like peas a lot.
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ, मेरे पास बैंगन है। माफ़ कीजिए, मगर, आजकल, मटर का मौसम नहीं है। इसलिए मेरे पास मटर नहीं है।	Yes, I have eggplant. Sorry, but, this is not the season for peas. This is why, I do not have peas.
विद्या:	कोई बात नहीं, बैंगन कितने का है ?	No problem, What is the cost of eggplant?
दुकानदार:	बैंगन 50 रुपये किलो है।	Eggplant is 50 rupees per kilo.
विद्या:	मुझे लगता है कि यह बहुत महँगा है।	I think, it is quite expensive.
दुकानदार:	नहीं जी, दाम एक दम ठीक है। क्या आपको मालूम है कि यहाँ बैंगन का आयात हम दूसरे राज्यों से करते हैं ?	No, the price is absolutely right. Do you know that we import eggplants from other states?
विद्या:	अच्छा भईया, मुझे मटर, इस बाज़ार में, कहाँ मिलेगा ?	Okay brother, where can I get peas in this market?
दुकानदार:	इस बाज़ार में तो आपको मटर कहीं नहीं मिलेगा।	You will not get peas in this market anywhere.
विद्या:	अच्छा कोई बात नहीं। आधा किलो आलू और एक किलो टमाटर दीजिए।	Okay, no problem. Please give me half kilo potato and one kilo tomato.
दुकानदार:	ठीक है। और कुछ ?	Okay. Anything else?
विद्या:	क्या आपके पास फल भी हैं ?	Do you have fruits too?
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ, मेरे पास सभी मौसमी फल हैं। आपको कौन से फल चाहिए ?	Yes, I have all seasonal fruits. What fruits do you want?
विद्या:	एक दर्जन केले और एक किलो सेब दे दीजिए।	Please give me one dozen banana and one kilo apple.
दुकानदार:	ठीक है। यह लीजिये आधा किलो आलू, एक किलो टमाटर, एक दर्जन केले और एक किलो सेब।	Okay, Please take half kilo potato, one kilo tomato, one dozen banana, and one kilo apple.
विद्या:	कितना हुआ ?	How much?
दुकानदार:	एक सौ पंद्रह रुपये	125 rupees.
विद्या:	ठीक है. यह लीजिए आपके पैसे, नमस्ते	Okay, please take your money. Bye
दुकानदार:	नमस्ते	Bye.

Listening

Please listen to the above written conversation. [फल और सब्ज़ी की दुकान पर](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please answer the following Question based on your reading/listening

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=876>

(b) Please ask these questions to 3 classmates or friends and find out who have similar likes and dislikes.

प्रश्न	दोस्त १	दोस्त २	दोस्त ३
आपको कौन सा फल पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सी सब्ज़ी पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सा फल नापसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सी सब्ज़ी नापसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सा शहर पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सी भाषा पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सा त्योहार पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सा देश पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सा वीडियो गेम पसंद है ?			
आपको कौन सी चीज़ सबसे ज़्यादा पसंद है ?			

धन्यवाद !

5.3: Reading/Listening 2- भोजनालय में

भोजनालय में



"South Indian meal set 'special', Kanyakumari, Tamil Nadu, India" by Happy Sleepy is licensed under CC BY-NC-SA 2.0

Vocabulary

Hindi	Grammatical Category	English
आना	<i>v.i.</i>	To come
भोजनालय	<i>n.m.</i>	Restaurant
स्वागत	<i>n.m.</i>	Welcome
बैठना	<i>v.i.</i>	To sit
धन्यवाद	<i>v.m.</i>	Thanks
खिड़की	<i>v.f.</i>	Window
x के पास	<i>pp.</i>	Near X
खाली	<i>adj.</i>	Available
x के बाहर	<i>pp.</i>	Outside of X
दृश्य	<i>n.m.</i>	Scene
देखना	<i>v.t.</i>	To see
पसंद करना	<i>v.t.</i>	To like
पानी	<i>n.m.</i>	Water
x के अलावा	<i>pp.</i>	Other than X
लेना	<i>v.t.</i>	To take

हरी	<i>adj.</i>	Green
सब्ज़ी	<i>n.f.</i>	Vegetable
स्वादिर	<i>adj.</i>	Delicious
x के लिए	<i>pp.</i>	For X

Test yourself

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1183>

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please make a list of your favorite Indian food.
- (b) After making your own list of favorite Indian food, please ask your friends and try to find out who else has the similar favorite food.
- (c) Please try to find out Indian food menu from any Indian restaurant in your area.

Reading

भोजनालय में

Context: Hrithik and Puja are in an Indian restaurant ordering food.

बैरा:	आइये साहब, इस भोजनालय में आपका स्वागत है, यहाँ बैठिये ।	Please come sir, you are welcome in this restaurant, please sit here.
ऋतिक:	धन्यवाद ! खिड़की के पास कोई टेबल खाली है ? मुझे बाहर का दृश्य देखना पसंद है ।	Thanks! Is there any table available near a window? I like to see outside view.
बैरा:	जी हाँ साहब खाली है, आइये, वहाँ बैठिये ।	Yes sir, it is available. Please come sit there.
ऋतिक:	बहुत अच्छा भाई, धन्यवाद !	Very well brother, thanks!
[बैठने के बाद]		[After sitting]
बैरा:	यह लीजिये पानी और खाने का मेन्यु (menu) । पानी के अलावा, पीने के लिए आपको क्या चाहिए ?	Here is water and food menu. What else do you want to drink other than water?
ऋतिक:	मुझे आपके यहाँ की शरबत बहुत पसंद है । पूजा, तुम्हें क्या चाहिए ?	I really like your "Sharabat." Puja, what do you want?
पूजा:	मुझे लस्सी चाहिए । मुझे आम की लस्सी बहुत पसंद है ।	I want lassii. I really like mango lassii.
[थोड़ी देर बाद]		[After a while]
बैरा:	साहब, यह लीजिये आपकी शरबत, और मेम साहब, यह रही आपकी आम की लस्सी । आप लोग खाने में क्या-क्या लेंगे ?	Sir, there is your "sharabat," and madam, here is your mango lassii. What do you like in food?
ऋतिक:	मुझे चिकेन करी, दो रोटियाँ, और एक प्लेट चावल चाहिए ।	I want chicken curry, two breads, and one plate rice.
पूजा:	मुझे पालक पनीर, और दो रोटियाँ चाहिए ।	I want palak paneer, and two breads.
बैरा:	और कुछ ?	Anything else?
पूजा:	जी हाँ, मुझे एक प्लेट हरी सब्जियों का सलाद भी चाहिए ।	Yes, I need one plate of green vegetables' salad.

बैरा:	बहुत अच्छा ।	Very well.
	[खाना खाने के बाद]	[After eating the food]
बैरा:	क्या आप को खाना पसंद आया ?	Did you like the food?
पूजा:	जी हाँ, खाना बहुत स्वादिष्ट था ।	Yes, it was delicious.
बैरा:	धन्यवाद मेम साहब ! आपको मीठे में क्या चाहिए ?	Thanks madam! What do you like in dessert?
ऋतिक:	मुझे एक कुल्फी चाहिए । और पूजा, तुम्हें क्या चाहिए ?	I like kulfi. And Puja, what do you want?
पूजा:	मुझे भी कुल्फी पसंद है ।	I like kulfi too.
बैरा:	बहुत अच्छा साहब । मैं अभी लाता हूँ ।	Very well. I will bring that right away.
ऋतिक:	और हाँ भाई, हमें खाने का बिल भी जल्दी चाहिए । हमें फ़िल्म के लिए देर हो रही है ।	And yes brother, please bring the bill too. We are getting late for a movie.
बैरा:	बिल्कुल साहब ।	Sure sir.
	[थोड़ी देर बाद]	[After a while]
बैरा:	ये लीजिये साहब आपकी कुल्फियाँ और खाने का बिल ।	Here is your kulfi and bill.
ऋतिक:	कुल कितने रुपये का बिल है ?	What is the total amount?
बैरा:	180 रुपये का साहब ।	180 rupees, sir.
ऋतिक:	यह लो दो सौ रुपये । 20 रुपये तुम्हारे लिए ।	Please take 200 rupees. 20 rupees for you.
बैरा:	बहुत बहुत धन्यवाद साहब ।	many many thanks sir.

Listening

Please listen to the above written conversation. [भोजनालय में](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your comprehension

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/lt151/?p=1183>

(b) Based on the above conversation, please prepare an imagined conversation between you and a server at an Indian restaurant.

(c) Please prepare a skit “at a restaurant” with your two other friends.

धन्यवाद !

5.4: Study Abroad

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

Reading

Context: After reaching to India, Jen moved to her host family. Her host mother and Jen are talking about Jen's needs, likes, and dislikes in the following conversation.

कमला:	बेटी जेन, तुम्हारा हमारे घर में स्वागत है। यह तुम्हारा कमरा है ?	Daughter Jen, you are most welcome in our home. This is your room.
जेन:	धन्यवाद कमला जी, यह कमरा तो बहुत बड़ा और सुन्दर है ?	Thanks Kamala Ji, This room is very big and beautiful.
कमला:	हाँ बेटी, हम यह कमरा हर साल अपने अमेरिकी अतिथी को देते हैं। तुम ठीक से कमरा देख लो और मुझे बताओ कि तुम्हें और कुछ चाहिए ?	Yes daughter, We offer this room to our American guest every year. Please look at this room and let me know if you need anything.
जेन:	माता जी, कमरा बहुत अच्छा है। मुझे इन खिड़कियों पर पर्दे चाहिए।	Mother, the room is very good. I need curtains on these windows.
कमला:	खिड़कियों पर पर्दे हैं। मगर अभी धुलने के लिए उतारे गये हैं।	There are curtains on these windows. But right now they are being washed.
जेन:	अच्छा। मुझे एक टेबल लैंप भी चाहिए।	Great! I also need a table lamp.
कमला:	ठीक है। मैं आज ही एक टेबल लैंप तुम्हारे कमरे में लगा दूंगी। तुम्हें और कुछ चाहिए ?	Very well. I will get you a table lamp in your room. What else do you need?
जेन:	नहीं और कुछ नहीं। धन्यवाद	Nothing at all. Thanks.
कमला:	अच्छा बेटी, क्या तुम्हें हिन्दुस्तानी खाना पसंद है?	Okay daughter, do you like Indian food?
जेन:	जी हाँ, कमला जी, मुझे हिन्दुस्तानी खाना बहुत पसंद है।	Yes, Kamala ji, I like Indian food very much.
कमला:	अच्छा। और तुम्हें सुबह-सुबह चाय चाहिए या कॉफी ?	Okay. Do you like tea or coffee in the morning?
जेन:	आप लोग क्या पीते हैं ?	What do you all drink?
कमला:	हम लोग तो चाय पीते हैं ? मगर घर में, कॉफी मशीन भी है।	We drink tea. But we have coffee machine in the house too.
जेन:	बहुत अच्छा ! मैं आप लोगों के साथ सुबह सुबह चाय पीना चाहती हूँ।	Very well! I would like to drink tea in the morning with you all.
कमला:	बहुत अच्छा ! अब तुम आराम करो और सात बजे तैयार हो कर रात के खाने के लिए बाहर आओ।	Very well! Now you rest and come out at 7 PM for dinner.
जेन:	ठीक है कमला जी, और आपके परिवार के और लोग कहाँ हैं ?	Okay Kamala ji. Where are the other members of your family?
कमला:	अभी सब व्यस्त हैं, रात को खाने पर मैं तुम्हारा परिचय सब लोगों से करवा दूंगी।	Right now, they are busy. I will introduce you to all others at the dinner.
जेन:	ठीक है, कमला जी। आपका बहुत बहुत धन्यवाद !	Okay Kamala ji. Thanks to you.

Listening

Please listen to the above written conversation. [Click Here](#)

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please talk to a native speaker of Hindi and find out things that you might need to live three months in India.
- (b) If you have ever lived in India please make a list of things that you needed there.

धन्यवाद!

5.5: Verb "To be" in the Past Tense

Past Tense of "To be" Video

Instructor Video: Verb "to be" in Past tense

In previous chapter, we learned that verb "to be" होना in Hindi has four different forms in present tense. We also learned the uses of those four forms. See the table below for a quick review.

Forms of verb "to be" होना	Uses
हूँ	with मैं (I).
हो	with तुम (familiar you).
है	with तू (informal you), यह (This, s/he), वह (That, s/he), and singular subjects.
हैं	with हम (we), आप (formal you), ये (These, They), वे (Those, They), and with plural and honorific subjects.

Today, we are going to learn about the past tense forms of the verb "to be" in Hindi. There are four forms of verb "to be" in the past form. Please see the table below for forms and their uses.

Forms of verb "to be" होना	Uses
था	with masculine singular subjects.
थी	with feminine singular subjects.
थे	with masculine plural and honorific subjects.
थीं	with feminine plural and honorific subjects.

Examples	
Hindi	English
इस कमरे में, एक लड़का (m. sing) था ।	There was a boy in this room.
इस कमरे में, एक कुर्सी (f. sing) थी ।	There was a chair in this room.
इस कमरे में दो दरवाज़े (m. plu) थे ।	There were two doors in this room.
इस कमरे में बहुत किताबें (f. plu) थीं ।	There were many books in this room.
मोहन (m. sing) स्कूल में था ।	Mohan was in school.
मेरे दोस्त (m. plu) बाज़ार में थे ।	My friends were in the market.
पिता जी (m. sing, hon) बैठक में थे ।	Father was in the living room.
सीता पुस्तकालय (f. sing) में थी ।	Sita was in the library.
मेरी बहनें (f. plu) बगीचे में थीं ।	My sisters were in the garden.
चाची जी (f. sing, hon) अपने कमरे में थीं ।	Aunt was in her room.

Activity

Please choose the correct form of the past form of verb “to be” to fill in the blanks.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1177>

धन्यवाद !

5.6: Subject with को

Subject with को Video

Instructor Video: Subject with -को

In Hindi, subject can have a nominative case like English. Additionally, Hindi subject can also come with dative and ergative cases. Here, we are going to learn, subject with dative case. We use dative case when the subject is not a doer of an action, but an experiencer and/or a beneficiary of an action. Dative case in Hindi is marked with को “ko.”

There are a few verbs that take require dative subject with को marking. In this chapter, we are going to learn only three in details and I will mention a few others here too. But, you will encounter more verbs, adjectives and nouns that require subject with को, as you progress further in Hindi language learning journey. As subject is marked with dative case को, the verb agrees with the object of that sentence.

Verbs that require dative subject with को	
पसंद	like
नापसंद	dislike
चाहिए	need

पसंद “to like.”

When you like someone or something, you are not doing anything actively, but you are mere experiencer of something that is pleasing to you. Hence, the verb “to like” needs a subject in dative case with को marker. When subject receive a case marker को which is a post-position, the subject changes into oblique form.

Examples		
Hindi	English	Explanation
मुझे चाय पसंद है।	I like tea.	मैं with को = मुझे in oblique, and verb है is agreeing with चाय “tea.” Literal translation of this Hindi sentence in English will be “to me tea is pleasing.” This pattern will follow for the rest of the examples given here.
मुझे मेरे छात्र पसंद हैं।	I like my students.	Here, the verb हैं is agreeing with plural subject छात्र “students.”
पीटर को हिन्दी पसंद है।	Peter likes Hindi.	Here, the verb है agrees with हिन्दी “Hindi.”
बचपन में, मेरे भाई को खिलौने पसंद थे।	In childhood, My brother liked toys.	Here, the verb थे agrees with खिलौने “toys.”

नापसंद “to dislike.”

Dislike is similar to like. Hence, the verb “to dislike” needs a subject in dative case with को marker. When subject receive a case marker को which is a post-position, the subject changes into oblique form.

Examples		
Hindi	English	Explanation

मुझे कॉफी नापसंद है ।	I dislike coffee.	मैं with को = मुझे in oblique, and verb है is agreeing with कॉफी “coffee.” Literal translation of this Hindi sentence in English will be “to me coffee is displeasing.” This pattern will follow for the rest of the examples given here.
मुझे बेईमान लोग नापसंद हैं ।	I dislike dishonest people.	Here, the verb हैं is agreeing with plural subject बेईमान लोग “dishonest people.”
पीटर को दौड़ना नापसंद है ।	Peter dislikes running.	Here, the verb है agrees with a verb that acts as a noun (object) दौड़ना “to run.”
बचपन में, मेरी भाई को गाड़िया नापसंद थीं ।	In childhood, My brother disliked cars.	Here, the verb थीं agrees with गाड़ियां “cars.”

Note: पसंद नहीं = नापसंद — I Hindi, native speakers tend to use negative marker नहीं with पसंद to express dislike.

For example:

- मुझे कॉफी पसंद नहीं है । I do not like (dislike) coffee.
- पीटर को दौड़ना पसंद नहीं है । Peter does not like (dislikes) running. etc.

Activity

Please read the following questions carefully. After reading these question, please answer them and then ask these questions to three of your friends/family members and try to find common likes and dislikes.

	Questions	मुझे	मेरे दोस्त को	मेरे दोस्त को	मेरे दोस्त को
1	आपको कौन सा फल पसंद है ?				
2	आपको कौन सी सब्जी पसंद है ?				
3	आपको कौन सा रंग पसंद है ?				
4	आपको कौन सा देश पसंद है ?				
5	आपको कौन सा शहर पसंद है ?				
6	आपको कौन सा फल नापसंद है ?				
7	आपको कौन सी सब्जी नापसंद है ?				
8	आपको कौन सा रंग नापसंद है ?				
9	आपको कौन सा देश नापसंद है ?				
10	आपको कौन सा शहर नापसंद है ?				

धन्यवाद!

5.7: चाहिए "Need"

चाहिए "Need" Video

Instructor Video: चाहिए "Need"

As in English, need is a modal verb and different from "to want," like wise चाहिए "need" acts like a modal verb (it does not change its form based on the subject/object), and different from चाहना "to want."

Like पसंद "like," and नापसंद "dislike," चाहिए "need" also requires subject with को. However, चाहिए "need" as a modal verb does not agree with either with the subject or the object of a sentence, it remains the same.

It is used to express need and desire.

Examples		
Hindi	English	Explanation
मुझे पानी चाहिए ।	I need water.	Subject is marked with को, and hence out of agreement. पानी is masculine, but चाहिए is modal verb and not changing its form either according to the subject or the object.
आपको क्या चाहिए ?	What do you need?	क्या "what" is unknown here, so we can't decide the number and gender of क्या. However, चाहिए will not change its form in any case.
मेरी बहन को एक किताब चाहिए ।	My sister needs a book.	Here, मेरी बहन "My sister" is feminine and marked with को, and किताब "book" is feminine too. But, चाहिए will not change its form according to feminine किताब "book."
मेरे दोस्त को एक कुछ पैसे चाहिए ।	My friend needs some money.	Here, मेरे दोस्त "My friend" is masculine and marked with को, and कुछ पैसे "some money" is masculine plural. But, चाहिए will not change its form according to feminine कुछ पैसे "some money."

Activities

Please write at least two sentence about what you need in several situations that are given below. After doing filling your part, please ask these questions to three of your friends/family members and then audio-record yourself.

	Situations	मुझे	मेरे दोस्त को	मेरे दोस्त को	मेरे दोस्त को
1	भोजनालय में "at a restaurant," आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
2	हवाई अड्डे पर "at an airport," आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
3	स्कूल में "in a school," आपको क्या चाहिए ?				

4	खाने की मेज़ पर "on the dinner table," आपको क्या चाहिए ?				
5	जीवन/ज़िंदगी में "in life," आपको क्या चाहिए ?				

Speaking

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=880>

Other nouns/adjectives/verbs that need subject with को

	Words	English	Example sentences
1	लगना	to feel	मुझे लगता है कि "I feel that..." मुझे लगता है कि आज बारिश होगी "I feel that it will rain today."
		to seem	मुझे लगता है कि हिन्दी बहुत आसान भाषा है "It seems to me that Hindi is an easy language."
		to take money/time	भारत जाने में, हमें हज़ारों डॉलर्स लगते हैं "It takes thousands of dollars for us to go to India." शिकागो जाने में, मुझे चार घंटे लगते हैं "It takes me four hours to go to Chicago."
2	आना	to know how to.	मुझे तैरना आता है "I know how to swim." मुझे गाड़ी चलाना/चलानी आता/आती है "I know how to drive a car."
3	मालूम	to be aware of	मुझे मालूम है कि "I know that ..." मुझे मालूम है कि आप कहाँ रहते हैं "I know where you live." मुझे मालूम है कि अमेरिका के राष्ट्रपति कौन हैं "I know who is the president of America."
4	खुशी	happiness	मुझे खुशी है कि ... "I am happy that..." मुझे खुशी है कि आप हिन्दी सीख रहे हैं "I am happy that you are learning Hindi."
4	अफ़सोस/ दुःख	regret/sad	मुझे अफ़सोस/दुःख है कि "I am sorry that ..." मुझे दुःख/अफ़सोस है कि मैं आप से नहीं मिल सका "I am sorry that I could not meet you." मुझे दुःख/अफ़सोस है कि आपकी दादी नहीं रहीं "I am sorry that your grandmother has passed away."

5	आशा	hope	मुझे आशा है कि "I hope that ..." मुझे आशा है कि आप सफल होंगे "I hope that you will be successful." मुझे आशा है कि एक दिन आप हिन्दी में बात करेंगी "I hope that you will converse in Hindi one day."
6	मिलना	happen to meet someone/to find/to get/to receive	मुझे वह एक दुकान में मिली "I happen to meet her in a shop." मुझे बगीचे में, एक सौ डॉलर मिले "I found one hundred dollars in a garden." मुझे अच्छी चाय कहाँ मिलेगी Where will I find good tea?" मुझे कम वेतन मिलता है "I receive/get less salary."

Activities

Please write 5 sentences with each of the following words given below. Please use subject with को for each sentence. After writing these sentences, please record your sentences and send it to your friends/family members.

(1)	खुशी	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	
(2)	अफ़सोस	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	
(3)	लगना	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	
(4)	आना	1	
		2	
		3	
		4	
		5	

Speaking

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

धन्यवाद !

5.8: Expressing Possession in Hindi

Expressing Possession Video

Instructor Video: [Expressing Possession in Hindi](#)

In English, we use “to have” to express possession.

- For examples:
I have a car.
I have two sisters.
I have a fever.
This book has several chapters.

In Hindi, there are four different ways to express possession “to have.” It depends on a thing that is being possessed.

	In Hindi	Uses	Examples
To have	के पास	It is used to express possession of those inanimate things of which the ownership is not necessarily permanent, and are tangible, movable and material objects.	मेरे पास बहुत किताबें हैं “I have many books.” क्या आपके पास कुछ पैसे हैं ? “Do you have some money?”
	का/के/की	का, के, की are used to express possession of kin, limbs of the body and also permanent/ legal possessions such as land etc.	मेरा एक भाई है I have a brother.” आपकी दो सुन्दर आँखें हैं “S/he has two beautiful eyes.”
	को	को is used to show possession of abstract entity could be (a) Physical ailments such as fever, cold, cough, headache, etc. (b) Free time or work, and (c) Need.	उसको तेज़ बुखार है “S/he has high fever.” मुझे बहुत काम है “I have lots of work.”
	में	में is used to show possession of an integral part of a whole in Hindi.	मेरे घर में, चार कमरे हैं My home has four rooms.” मेरे स्कूल में, पच्चीस अध्यापक हैं My school has 25 teachers.”

Activity

Please choose the correct form of subject to express possession in Hindi.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/lt151/?p=882>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [5.8: Expressing Possession in Hindi](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

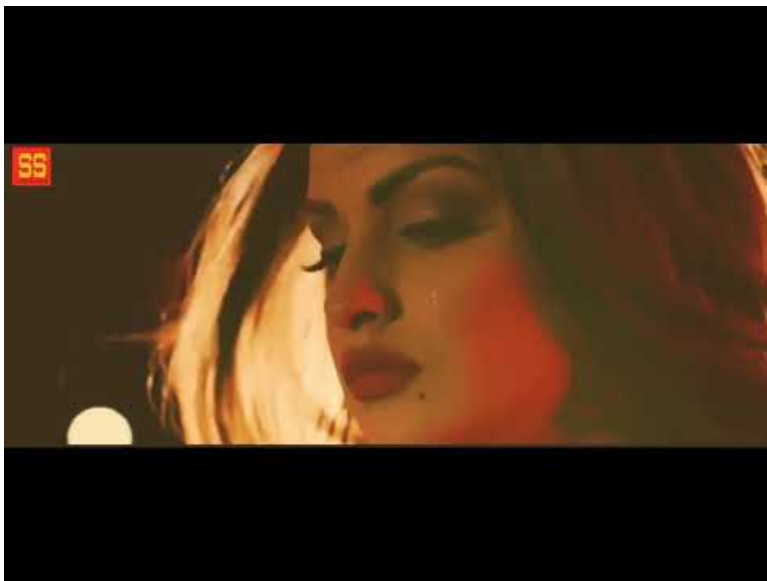
5.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1	Fruits and Vegetables shop in India and South Asia	In America, we typically go to a supermarket and/or farmers' market to buy fresh fruits and vegetables. But in India and South Asia, each small town/city/village has many small fruits and vegetables. Some towns have designated area for these small shops. Unlike America, you need to talk to the shopkeeper to ask for the price, negotiate the price before buying it. So, the conversation is a must.
2	At a restaurant in India and South Asia	Effect of globalization is very visible when it comes to restaurant in India and South Asia. However, there are still many smaller food stall and restaurant which still are of old fashion. In these restaurant, they typically do not have menu card with price list. There is a typical server who will come to you with a glass of water and tell you what are the available items and what are their prices.
3	चाहना and चाहिए	In English, there is a big difference between "to want," and "to need." However, in Hindi, native speakers use चाहिए "to need" for everything they want/need. चाहना "to want" is typically used in construction like मैं चाहता हूँ कि "I want that"
4	Expressing desire/need	Native speakers do not use direct statement such as "मुझे ___x___ चाहिए" to express desire/need. Instead they ask indirectly using question sentence and/or subjunctive. For example: क्या खाना है? (Is there food?) = मुझे खाना चाहिए (I need food). क्या आपके पास कलम है? (Do you have a pen?) मुझे आपकी कलम चाहिए (I need your pen.)

Extra/Optional Online Materials

Hindi song: "Mujhko tu chaahiye"



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/l151/?p=1168>

At a restaurant:



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/l151/?p=1168>

At a vegetable market:



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1168>

Thank you !

This page titled [5.9: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

6: GIVING INSTRUCTION AND MAKING REQUEST

- 6.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials
- 6.2: Review of Chapter 5
- 6.3: Reading/Listening 1- मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की विधि
- 6.4: Reading/Listening 2- रास्ता बताना
- 6.5: Reading/Listening 3- सोशल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना
- 6.6: Study Abroad
- 6.7: Verbs
- 6.8: Imperative Construction
- 6.9: Object with को and से
- 6.10: Expressing Obligation and Suggestions

6.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1.	तू, तुम, आप	It is very important for all Hindi language learners to learn the proper uses of तू, तुम, आप. Typically, people learn about students' cultural competence based on their uses of these three variants of the pronoun "You." As it is explained in the chapter, you should use them appropriately.
2.	Giving order	As you learned in this chapter that तू and तुम forms are used for giving instruction and command. Hindi native speakers hardly use this with strangers. So, if you meet any strangers please use आप form and try not to give instruction and command form.
3.	Making request	Please use this आप form to make a request. However, it is important to keep in mind that native speakers may use subjunctive to express request and not the imperative forms of आप.
4.	Cooking	Unlike America, in India, traditionally, people learn to cook by either participating in cooking or observing. Reading a cook book and/or follow any written recipe is not in culture.
5.	Giving direction	In India, people use landmarks for giving direction because towns/cities are not well planned and hence no one really knows the name of the street other than the main streets/roads.
6.	Giving suggestions	Indians and South Asians always give advice and suggestions even though you won't ask for it. It may sound for non-Indians as violation of privacy and receiving unsolicited suggestions. However, this is the way they show that they care and express their love for you. Please observe this culture and participate in this. Additionally, older people may use imperative construction to give suggestions/advice rather than (verb+चाहिए) construction which might sound rude but this is how they want to emphasize that you should do what s/he is suggesting you.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

Verbs:

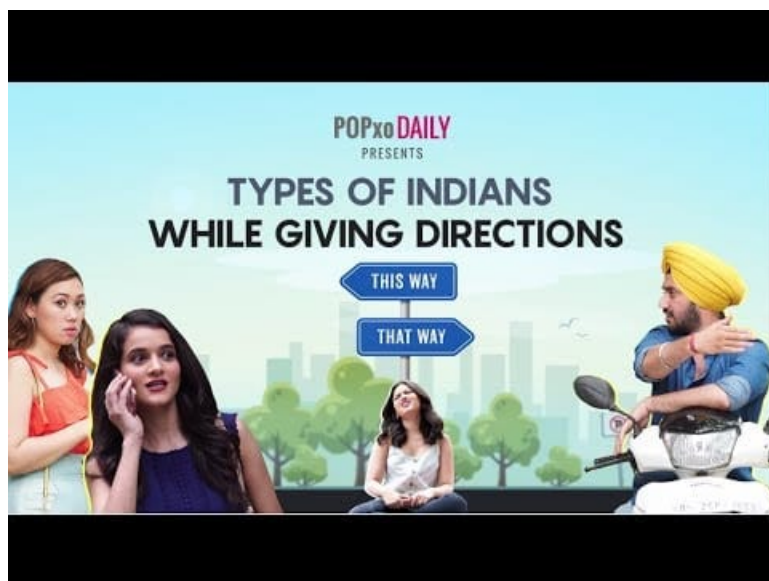
<https://www.hindipod101.com/hindi-vo...t-common-verbs>

Recipe:



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1144>

Giving Direction in Hindi



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1144>

Free Advice in India/South Asia.



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1144>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [6.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

6.2: Review of Chapter 5

Vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=930>

Grammar

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=930>

Reading/Listening

Reading: जेन सिम कार्ड/मोबाइल फ़ोन की दुकान पर

Context: Jen needs a sim card to use in India during her study abroad. she goes to a phone/sim card shop and buys a sim card.

जेन:	नमस्ते जी, क्या आपके पास airtel का सिम कार्ड है ?	Namaste ji, do you have airtel sim card?
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ, यहाँ आपको सभी कम्पनीयों के सिम कार्ड मिलेंगे ।	Yes, here, you will sim card of all the companies.
जेन:	मुझे airtel का एक सिम कार्ड चाहिए ।	I just need one airtel sim card.
दुकानदार:	ठीक है, क्या आपके पास कोई फ़ोटो वाली पहचान कार्ड है?	Okay, Do you have any photo identity card?
जेन:	जी हाँ, मेरे पास मेरा पासपोर्ट है ।	Yes, I have my passport.
दुकानदार:	बहुत अच्छा । क्या आपके पास आपका कोई फ़ोटो है ?	Very good, do you have a photo?
जेन:	जी हाँ, मेरी मेज़बान माता जी ने कहा था कि मुझे फ़ोटो ले जाना चाहिए । यह रहा मेरा फ़ोटो ।	Yes, my host mother had said that I should bring my photo. Here is my photo.
दुकानदार:	अरे वाह ! यह बहुत अच्छी बात है । आपको सिम कार्ड में कितने पैसे चाहिए ?	Wonderful! This is good. How much money do you need in your sim card?
जेन:	मुझे मालूम नहीं । क्या आप मुझे इसके बारे में बता सकते हैं?	I don't know. Can you tell me more about it?
दुकानदार:	जी हाँ ज़रूर, आम तौर पर, लोग तीन सौ रुपये का रिचार्ज खरीदते हैं। इसके अलावा, दो सौ रुपये का इन्टरनेट पैक ।	Sure, generally, people get recharge of 300 rupees. Other than that, they also get internet pack of rupees 200.
जेन:	ठीक है। मुझे भी ये दोनों चाहिए ।	Okay. I need both of these.
दुकानदार:	बहुत अच्छा । यह लीजिये आपका सिम कार्ड ।	Very well. Here is your sim card.
जेन:	कितने पैसे हुए ?	How much money?
दुकानदार:	पांच सौ पचास रुपये ।	550
जेन:	अरे भाई, सिर्फ़ पांच सौ रुपये हुए ना ?	Oh brother, is it not 500 rupees only?
दुकानदार:	नहीं मैडम, पचास रुपये सिम शुरू करने का चार्ज है ।	No madam, 50 rupees is service charge to activate the sim card.
जेन:	अच्छा ठीक है। यह लीजिये आपके पांच सौ पचास रुपये ।	Okay, alright. Please take this 550 rupees.
दुकानदार:	बहुत अच्छा, धन्यवाद !	Very good, thanks!

Listening

जेन सिम कार्ड/फ़ोन की दुकान पर

Post reading/Listening Activities:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=930>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=930>

धन्यवाद !

6.3: Reading/Listening 1- मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की विधि

मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की विधि “My favorite food and its recipe”



Famous Indian Food Khichdi is ready to serve.

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- Please share your favorite Indian food with your friends and ask your friends their favorite food.
- Make a list of two common favorite food and watch their recipe videos on the internet.
- Discuss with your friends/family about common ingredients in Indian food. Make a list of five common ingredients in Indian food that people use.

Reading

मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की विधि

Context: Hritik and Vidya are talking about their favorite food during the lunch break. Hritik tells Vidya about his favorite food and its recipe.

विद्या:	कैसे हो ऋतिक ?	How are you Hritik?
ऋतिक:	मैं ठीक हूँ। धन्यवाद। तुम कैसी हो ?	I am fine. Thanks. How are you?
विद्या:	मैं भी ठीक हूँ। धन्यवाद। आज तुम्हारे लंच बॉक्स में क्या है ?	I am good as well. Thanks. What is in your lunch box today?
ऋतिक:	आज मेरे लंच बॉक्स में रोटी और सब्जी है।	I have break and vegetable in my lunch box today.
विद्या:	क्या यह तुम्हारा पसंदीदा खाना है ?	Is this your favorite food?
ऋतिक:	नहीं, मुझे खिचड़ी बहुत पसंद है।	No, I like khichadi a lot.

विद्या:	अरे वाह! मुझे भी खिचड़ी पसंद है। लेकिन मुझे खिचड़ी बनानी नहीं आती।	Wao! I too like khichadi. But I don't know how to cook it.
ऋतिक:	अरे यह तो बहुत आसान है।	This is very easy.
विद्या:	क्या तुम मुझे इसे बनाने की विधि बता सकते हो?	Can you tell me the recipe of it.
ऋतिक:	बिल्कुल, खिचड़ी बनाने के लिए तुम्हें चावल, दाल, टमाटर, प्याज, मटर, घी, लाल मिर्च, हरी मिर्च, अदरक, लहसून, जीरा, हिंग, हल्दी, गर्म मसाला, धनिया और नमक चाहिए।	Sure, To cook khichadi, you need rice, lentils, tomato, onion, peas, ghee, red chilli, green chili, ginger, garlic, cumin, asafoetida, turmeric, garam masala, coriander, and salt.
विद्या:	मुझे लगता है कि ये सारी चीजें मेरे घर पर हैं। अब मुझे इसे बनाने की विधि बताओ।	I think these all things are available at home. Now, tell me the recipe.
ऋतिक:	सबसे पहले एक प्रेशर कुकर में, घी डालो, फिर उस में जीरा, दो लाल मिर्च और हिंग डालो। दो मिनट तलने के बाद उस में प्याज, टमाटर, मटर, अदरक, लहसून, और नमक डाल कर तीन से चार मिनट तक पकाओ। उसके बाद, उसमें हल्दी, और गर्म मसाला डालो। जब एक पेस्ट तैयार हो जाय तो उसमें दाल और चावल डालो। उसे अच्छे से मिलाओ। फिर प्रेशर कुकर में चार-पांच कप पानी डाल कर पांच सिटी लगने तक पकाओ। फिर प्रेशर कुकर खोलो और खिचड़ी को दही के साथ परोसो।	First of all, Add ghee, cumin, two red chilli and asafoetida in a pressure cooker. After frying that for two minutes, add onion, tomato, peas, ginger, garlic, and salt in that and cook for three to four minutes. After that add turmeric and garam masala in it. When the pest is ready, add rice and lentils in it. Mix it well. Add four to five cups of water in it and cook it till five whistles. After that open the pressure cooker and serve the khichadi with yogurt.
विद्या:	यह तो बहुत आसान है। मैं आज ही इसे बनाने की कोशिश करूंगी।	This is very easy. I will try to cook it today.
ऋतिक:	अच्छा विद्या, तुम्हारा पसंदीदा खाना क्या है?	Okay Vidya, what is your favorite food?
विद्या:	मुझे तो चिकेन करी बहुत पसंद है।	I like chicken curry a lot.
ऋतिक:	क्या तुम मुझे चिकेन करी बनाने की विधि बता सकती हो?	Can you tell me the recipe of the chicken curry?
विद्या:	हाँ, क्यों नहीं? लेकिन आज नहीं, कल।	Yes, why not? But not today, tomorrow.
ऋतिक:	ठीक है। फिर मिलेंगे।	Okay, see you again.
विद्या:	नमस्ते	Namaste.

Listening

मेरा पसंदीदा खाना और इसे बनाने की विधि

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your comprehension.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=942>

(b) List the ingredients of your favorite Indian food.

(c) Please write the recipe of your favorite Indian food.

(d) Please make a video of cooking your favorite Indian food, and share it with class/your friends.

Additional Listening

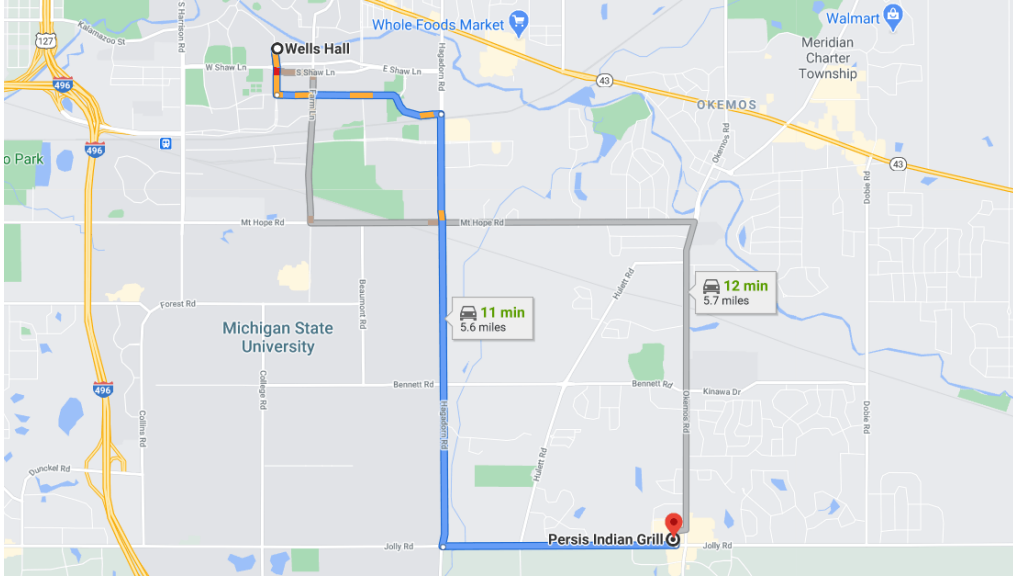
Please answer the questions integrated in the video.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

धन्यवाद !

6.4: Reading/Listening 2- रास्ता बताना

रास्ता बताना “Giving Direction”



Pre-reading/listening activities

(a) Learn/review these phrases

रास्ता बताना	To tell the direction	दाहिने मुड़ना	To turn right
सीधा जाना	To go straight	थोड़ी दूर पर	At a little distance
बाएँ मुड़ना	To turn left	थोड़ी देर में	In a little while

(b) Please go to google map (or any map that you use) and find your favorite place in your city/town and write the direction to that place from your school, and then try to say that in Hindi and make notes of your challenges.

Reading

रास्ता बताना

Context: Peter is at an Indian restaurant and ask Shilpa to join him for lunch. Shilpa does not know the place. So, Peter gives her the direction on a phone call.

पीटर:	हेलो शिल्पा	Hello Shilpa.
शिल्पा:	हेलो पीटर, क्या बात है ? तुम कहाँ हो ?	Hello Peter, What is the matter? Where are you?
पीटर:	मैं एक भारतीय रेस्टोरेंट में हूँ। यह बहुत अच्छी जगह है। अगर तुम खाली हो तो हम साथ में खाना खा सकते हैं।	I am at an Indian restaurant. This is a great place. If you are available we can eat lunch together.

शिल्पा:	हाँ, मैं खाली हूँ। मगर मुझे वहाँ का रास्ता मालूम नहीं।	Yes, I am available. But I don't know the direction to that place.
पीटर:	अभी तुम कहाँ हो ?	Where are you right now?
शिल्पा:	मैं अभी Wells Hall में हूँ।	I am in Wells Hall right now.
पीटर:	अच्छा, वहाँ से Red Cedar Road पर आओ और बाएँ मुड़कर सीधा चलो, और फिर Shaw Lane पर बाएँ मुड़ो। थोड़ी दूर चल कर Farm Lane पर दाहिने मुड़ो और सीधा चलो। उसके बाद, Mt. Hope Road पर बाएँ मुड़ो। उसके बाद, Haggadorn Road पर दाहिने मुड़ो। Haggadorn Road पर तीन मील पर Jolly Road आयेगा। Jolly Road पर बाएँ मुड़ो। एक मील पर, तुम्हें यह रेस्टोरेंट मिलेगा।	Okay, Come out of Wells hall, and turn left and walk straight on Red Cedar Road, and then take a left turn on Shaw Lane. After a little distance, take a right turn on Farm Lane and go straight. After that turn left of Mt. Hope Road. After that turn right on Haggadorn Road. After going on Haggadorn for three miles, Jolly Road would come. Turn left on Jolly Road. After a mile, you will find this restaurant.
शिल्पा:	बहुत अच्छा। मैं थोड़ी देर में वहाँ आती हूँ।	Very well. I come there in a little bit.
पीटर:	ठीक है, मैं तुम्हारा इंतज़ार कर रहा हूँ।	Okay, I am waiting for you.

Listening

रास्ता बताना

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(b) Please read/listen Peter's direction to an Indian restaurant in the above conversation and draw it on a paper and match that with the above given map.

(c) Review the direction related phrases.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1162>

धन्यवाद !

6.5: Reading/Listening 3- सोसल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना

सोसल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना “To open a social media account”



BELCHATOW, POLAND – APRIL 11, 2014: Photo of social network homepage on a monitor screen.

Pre-Reading/listening Activities

- In a group of three or four friends, please share which social media you use and why?
- Please write 5 words that explains social media in Hindi. Please seek help if you cannot.
- Please discuss/debate virtues and vices of social media. Please write your points in Hindi as much as possible. Please ask your friends/teacher for help.

Reading

Context: Peter is informing Vidya about facebook and gives her direction to open a facebook account.

विद्या:	पीटर, तुम अपने फ़ोन पर क्या करते रहते हो ?	Peter, what do you keep doing on your phone?
पीटर:	मैं अपना फ़ेसबुक देखता रहता हूँ ।	I keep checking my facebook.
विद्या:	यह फ़ेसबुक क्या है ?	What is this facebook?
पीटर:	फ़ेसबुक एक सोसल मीडिया है । फ़ेसबुक में तुम दोस्त बना सकती हो, अपनी तस्वीर लगा सकती हो और दूसरे शहरों और देशों के दोस्तों से बात कर सकती हो । क्या तुम्हारा फ़ेसबुक खाता नहीं है ?	Facebook is a social media. On facebook, you can make friends, post your photo and make friends from other towns and countries. Do you have a facebook account?
विद्या:	नहीं, आज मैं पहली बार इस फ़ेसबुक के बारे में सुन रही हूँ । क्या तुम मुझे फ़ेसबुक पर खाता खोलने में मदद करोगी ?	No, today, I am learning about the facebook first time. Will you help me to open a facebook account?
पीटर:	हाँ, ज़रूर, क्या तुम्हारा कोई ई.मेल अड्रेस है ?	Yes, indeed, do you have any e.mail. address?
विद्या:	हाँ, मेरा gmail पर एक खाता है ।	Yes, I have an account on gmail.

पीटर:	ठीक है। अब तुम अपने फ़ोन में facebook.com पर जाओ और create new account पर क्लिक करो। उसके बाद, अपना नाम, ई.मेल या फ़ोन नंबर, पासवर्ड, जन्म तिथि और लिंग दर्ज करो। उसके बाद साइन अप पर क्लिक करो। उसके बाद ई.मेल या फ़ोन नंबर की पुष्टि करो और तुम्हारा खाता खुल जाएगा।	Okay, Now you go to facebook.com on your phone and click on create new account. After that put your name, e.mail or phone number, password, date of birth and gender. After that click on sign up. After that confirm your e.mail or phone number and your account will open.
विद्या:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत आसान है। फिर क्या करना है ?	Oh wao! This is so easy. Then what do I have to do?
पीटर:	उसके बाद तुम अपने profile में अपना फ़ोटो और दूसरी सूचनाएं update कर सकती हो और दोस्तों को friend request भेज सकती हो।	After that you can update your profile photo and other information and can send friend requests to your friends.
विद्या:	बहुत अच्छा ! मैं आज ही फ़ेसबुक पर खाता खोल कर तुम्हें friend request भेजूंगी।	Very well! Today, I will open a facebook account and will send you a friend request.
पीटर:	बहुत अच्छा, फिर हम फ़ेसबुक पर बात करेंगे।	Very well, then we will chat on facebook.

Listening

सोशल मीडिया पर खाता खोलना

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

a) Please check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1159>

b) Imagine you are working in rural part of India with villagers. You want them to open a gmail account but they don't know English. Please prepare a list of instructions in Hindi to open a gmail account for them.

c) Imagine that you are helping someone to do a project in the area of your major. Please decide a smaller project and write a list of instructions to complete the project.

धन्यवाद !

6.6: Study Abroad

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

a) In a group of three or four friends, please discuss what do you want to learn if/when you are in India/any other South Asian country.

b) In a group of three or four friends, please discuss different beverages that people drink in the morning in India/South Asia and in America.

Reading

Context: Jen wakes up early in the morning and saw her host mother making chai “tea” for the family and wants to learn how to make Indian chai.

जेन:	शुभ प्रातः, माता जी, आप क्या बना रही हैं ?	Good morning, mother, what are you making?
कमला:	Good morning जेन, आज तुम जल्दी जाग गयी मैं परिवार के लिए चाय बना रही हूँ	Good morning Jen, You are awake so early today. I am making chai for the family.
जेन:	यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है मैं चाय बनाना सीखना चाहती हूँ	This is great. I want to learn how to make chai.
कमला:	चाय बनाना बहुत आसान है सबसे पहले, एक पैन में पानी, दूध, चाय पत्ती, और चाय का मसाला डाल के उबालिए	To make chai is very easy. First of all, please take water, milk, tea leaves, and tea spice in aaucepan and boil them.
	(थोड़ी देर बाद)	After a while
जेन:	कमला जी, यह अब उबल रहा है	Kamala ji, this is boiling now.
कमला:	अब आंच कम कीजिये और इसे थोड़ा ठंडा होने दीजिये	Now please lower the heat and let it cool down a little bit.
	(थोड़ी देर बाद)	After a while.
जेन:	कमला जी, यह अब थोड़ा ठंडा हो गया है	Kamala ji, it gets cooler a little.
कमला:	ठीक है, अब चाय छत्री से मसाले और चाय पत्ती को छान लीजिये	Okay, now please strain the tea leaves and tea spices using a strainer.
जेन:	हो गया	done.
कमला:	अब इसमें अपने स्वाद के अनुसार चीनी मिलाइए आपकी चाय तैयार	Now add sugar in this according to your taste. Your tea is ready.
जेन:	यह मेरी ज़िन्दगी का सबसे पहला चाय है जो मैंने खुद बनाया है	This is the first tea that I have made my own in my life.
कमला:	वाह ! अगर आप चाहें तो परिवार के लिए हर रोज़ चाय बना सकती हैं	Wao! If you want you can make tea for the family every day.
जेन:	अगर मैं हर दिन इस समय जाग पायी तो !	If I get up this time everyday.
	दोनों हँसती हैं और चाय का मजा लेती हैं	Both laugh and enjoy their tea.

Listening

चाय बनाने की विधि

Post-Reading/Listening Activities:

a)

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1156>

b) Please try to follow the instruction given above and try to make a cup of chai for yourself.

c)

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1156>

धन्यवाद !

6.7: Verbs

Verb Video

Instructor Video: Verb

Verb is an action word. Like all languages, Hindi verbs can be classified in three categories.

a) Intransitive verbs: Verbs that require only one noun and that noun can be the subject or object of a sentence. For example: Walk, Swim, Sleep, etc.

b) Transitive verbs: Verbs that require two nouns. One acts as a subject and other as an object. For example: Eat, Drink, Read, etc.

c) Di-transitive verb: Verbs that require three nouns. Nouns acts as a subject, indirect object and direct object in a sentence. For example: Give, Send, Receive, etc.

List of Commonly Used Verbs

English	verb type	Hindi	English	verb type	Hindi
To do	tran.	करना	To learn	tran.	सीखना
To go	intran.	जाना	To converse	tran.	बात करना
To come	intran.	आना	To laugh	intran.	हँसना
To turn	intran.	मुड़ना	To cry/weep	intran.	रोना
To reach	intran.	पहुँचना	To feel	tran.	महसूस करना
To return	intran.	लौटना	To use	tran.	उपयोग करना
To run	intran.	दौड़ना	To wait	tran.	इंतज़ार करना
To practice	tran.	अभ्यास करना	To remember	tran.	याद करना
To exercise	tran.	कसरत करना	To end	tran.	खत्म करना
To eat	tran.	खाना	To clean	tran.	साफ़ करना
To make food	tran.	खाना बनाना	To open	tran.	खोलना
To drink	tran.	पीना	To shut down	tran.	बंद करना
To die	intran.	मरना	To explain	ditran.	समझाना
To stand up	intran.	खड़ा होना	To buy	ditran.	खरीदना
To sit down	intran.	बैठना	To sell	ditran.	बेचना
To sleep	intran.	सोना	To see/watch	tran.	देखना
To wake up	intran.	जागना	To wash	tran.	धोना
To rest	tran.	आराम करना	To want	tran.	चाहना
To read/study	tran.	पढ़ना	To receive	tran.	प्राप्त करना
To teach	tran.	पढ़ाना	To plan	tran.	योजना बनाना
To write	tran.	लिखना	To keep	tran.	रखना

To speak	tran.	बोलना	To tour	tran.	सैर करना
To ask	ditran.	पूछना	To ride	tran.	सवारी करना
To say	tran.	कहना	To take	ditran.	लेना
To listen	tran.	सुनना	To give	ditran.	देना
To answer	tran.	उत्तर देना	To forgive	tran.	माफ़ करना

Activity

Please match the followings:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=982>

धन्यवाद !

6.8: Imperative Construction

Imperative Construction Video

Instructor Video: [Imperative Construction](#)

Imperative sentences are sentences that express request, commands, order, instruction, etc. Like in English, Subject “You” is dropped. However, unlike English, Hindi has three different forms of the pronoun ‘You,’ which are used in three different sociocultural contexts, as explained below.

English	Hindi	Uses
You	तू	तू is used for someone who is younger in age, lower socio-economic class. It is also used with someone who is very intimate to the speaker such as friend, mother, and God.
You	तुम	तुम is used for someone who is of the same age group, and same socio-economic class.
You	आप	आप is used for someone who is older in age, and higher socio-economic class. It is used for anyone who one wants to show respect.

Forms of Imperative Construction Based on Three Different Forms of “You”

The forms for “तू” and “तुम” are used for instruction, and command. Whereas, the form for “आप” is used for request.

Verbs	“तू “ Drop the -ना part of the verb	“तुम” Drop the -ना part and add “ओ”	“आप” Drop the -ना part and add “इये”
खाना “To eat”	खा	खाओ	खाइये
जाना “To go”	जा	जाओ	जाइये
आना “To come”	आ	आओ	आइये
पढ़ना “To read/study”	पढ़	पढ़ो	पढ़िये
लिखना “To write”	लिख	लिखो	लिखिए
सोना “To sleep”	सो	सोओ	सोइये
बोलना “To speak”	बोल	बोलो	बोलिये
सुनना “To listen”	सुन	सुनो	सुनिये
बैठना “To sit”	बैठ	बैठो	बैठिये
बनाना “To make”	बना	बनाओ	बनाइये

Some Irregular Imperative Forms

Verbs	“तू “	“तुम”	“आप”
करना “To do”	कर	करो	कीजिये

लेना "To take"	ले	लो	लीजिये
देना "To give"	दे	दो	दीजिये
पीना	पी	पियो	पीजिये

Giving Instruction and Command

To give instruction and command, in Hindi, "तू" and "तुम" forms of the verb are used.

For example:

- यहाँ आ/आओ "Come here."
- घर जा/जाओ "Go home."
- मेरी किताब ला/लाओ "Bring my book."
- मुझ से बात कर/करो "Talk to me."
- जॉन को अपनी कार बेच/बेचो "Sell your car to John."

Making Requests

To make request, in Hindi, "आप" form of the verb is used.

For example:

- यहाँ आइये "Please come here."
- घर जाइये "Please go home."
- मेरी किताब लाइये "Please bring my book."
- मुझ से बात कीजिये "Please talk to me."
- जॉन को अपनी कार बेचिये "Please sell your car to John."

Use of ज़रा/कृपया

In Hindi, formal imperatives do not necessarily imply "please." Just as in any language, the tone of voice, context, and personal relationships affect politeness.

The adverb कृपया (please), ज़रा (*just, a little*) is used to make a command milder/extra polite.

For example:

- कृपया/ज़रा यहाँ आइये "Please come here."
- कृपया/ज़रा घर जाइये "Please go home."
- कृपया/ज़रा मेरी किताब लाइये "Please bring my book."
- कृपया/ज़रा मुझ से बात कीजिये "Please talk to me."
- कृपया/ज़रा जॉन को अपनी कार बेचिये "Please sell your car to John."

Negation of Imperative Construction

In order to make negative imperative, command, and making negative request, in Hindi, words like "न" and "मत" can be used.

For example

- यहाँ न/मत आ/आओ "Do not come here."
- घर न/मत जा/जाओ "Do not go home."
- मेरी किताब न/मत लाइये "Please do not bring my book."
- मुझ से बात न/मत कीजिये "Please do not talk to me."

- कृपया/ज़रा जॉन को अपनी कार न/मत बेचिये "Please do not sell your car to John."

Note: Use of "न" post verb place in an imperative construction will make it request, and not a negative sentence.

For example:

"न" before verb for negation	"न" before verb for request
यहाँ न आइये "Please do not come here."	यहाँ आइये न "Please come here."
मुझ से बात न कीजिये "Please do not talk to me."	मुझ से बात कीजिये न "Please talk to me."
मेरी बात न सुनिये "Please do not listen to me."	मेरी बात सुनिये न "Please listen to me"

Activities

- Please write ten sentences of instructions and ask your friend to enact them, and vice-versa.
- Make a list of ten things that you want your parents to do for you. Please use "आप" form of the imperative construction.
- Please choose the correct form of the pronoun "You."

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1152>

धन्यवाद !

6.9: Object with को and से

Object with को and से Video

Instructor Video: [Object with -ko and -se](#)

को

In previous chapter, we have learned that the postposition को is used with the subject (a) when the subject is not an active doer of an action, but an experiencer, (b) to express internal feelings and sensation, (c) with the words like चाहिए “need,” लगना “feel,” आना “know how to,” मालूम “aware,” etc.

For example:

- राकेश को एक किताब चाहिए | “Rakesh needs a book.”
- मुझे बुखार है | “I have a fever.”
- उसको लगता है कि आज बारिश होगी | “He feels that it will rain today.”
- मुझे खाना बनाना आता है | “I know how to cook food.”
- सब को मालूम है कि हम दोस्त हैं | “Everyone knows that we are friends.”

Uses of Post-Position को

(a) With an inanimate definite object (not with inanimate indefinite object). Typically, the object with को also needs demonstrative pronouns such as यह “this,” वह “that,” etc., in oblique form as they are followed by postposition को.

For example:

- इस किताब को पढ़िए | “Please read this book.”
- इन चीजों को मत छुड़िये | “Please do not touch these things.”
- उन थालियों को धोइये | “Please wash those plates”
- उस कलम को खरीदिये | “Please buy that pen.”

(b) With animate direct object.

For example:

- जानवरों को मत मारो | “Do not kill animals.”
- जॉन ने मैरी को किस किया | “John kissed Mary.”
- बच्चों को मत पीटो | “Do not beat the children.”

(c) With indirect object.

- बच्चों को मिठाइयाँ दीजिये | “Please give sweets to the children.”
- अपनी माँ को चिट्ठी लिखो | “Write a letter to your mother.”
- दोस्तों को उपहार भेजो | “Send gifts to friends.”
- छात्रों को सवाल समझाओ | “Explain the question to students.”

से

(a) Postposition से is used with objects of the verbs of speaking, telling, etc.

For example:

- मुझसे बात कीजिये | “Please talk to me.”
- शिक्षक से सवाल पूछिए | “Please ask question to the teacher.”
- छात्रों से कहिये कि मुझसे हिन्दी में बात करें | “Please ask students to talk to me in Hindi.”
- उसने मुझसे हिन्दी में बोला कि मैं अच्छा आदमी हूँ | “He said to me in Hindi that I am a good man.”

(b) Postposition से is used with an object with verbs that require instrument, an equal active participant of an action.

- मुझसे मिलीये | “Please meet me.”
- माँ बच्चों से प्यार करती हैं | “Mother love children.”
- मैं आपसे प्यार करता हूँ | “I love you.”

Activity

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1150>

धन्यवाद !

6.10: Expressing Obligation and Suggestions

Expressing Obligation and Suggestions Video

Instructor Video: [Expressing Obligations and Suggestions](#)

In previous chapter, you have learned that चाहिए “need” is used to express the need. चाहिए “need” always takes subject with को.

For example:

- मुझे किताबें चाहिए | “I need books.”
- आपको क्या चाहिए ? “What do you need?”
- सब को पैसे चाहिए | “All needs money.”

However, when चाहिए “need” comes with verb, it expresses suggestion and obligation.

For example:

- आपको अपना काम करना चाहिए | “You should do your work.”
- सब को हिन्दी में बात करनी चाहिए | “All should converse in Hindi.”
- आपको अपने माता-पिता का आदर करना चाहिए | “You should/ought to respect your parents.”
- अब मुझे घर जाना चाहिए | “Now, I should go home.”

Activities

(a) Imagine that you and your friends are planning a trip to a tourist place. Please make a list of 10 things that you need and 10 things that you should do. [Hints: please use “noun+चाहिए” for things that you need, and “verb+चाहिए” for things that you should do].

(b) Imagine that you met a freshman who wants to do know what to do and what not to do in college level classes. Please make a list of 5 things that you think s/he should or should not do.

(c) In a group of two or three friends who are learning Hindi, please discuss how you can further improve your Hindi language skills. Please make a list of ten suggestions that you and your friends should be doing to improve your Hindi language skills.

धन्यवाद !

7: EXPRESSING PRESENT, PAST, AND FUTURE ACTIONS

7.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

7.2: Review of Chapter 6

7.3: Reading/Listening 1- दिनचर्या

7.4: Reading/Listening 2- मेरे शौक

7.5: Reading/Listening 3- त्योहार

7.6: Study Abroad

7.7: Grammar- Tense and Aspect

7.8: Grammar- The present and past habitual tense

7.9: The Present and Past Progressive Tense

7.10: Grammar- Simple Future Tense

7.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

Cultural Notes

	Topics	Explanation
1.	Food habits	In Hindi, there is no separate words for lunch and dinner. खाना “food” is used for both lunch and dinner. Typically, for both lunch and dinner, people eat full meal.
2.	चाय	चाय is one of the drink that Indian love to drink in the morning and in the evening with snacks. Additionally, चाय is served in office often and it is a drink for a break between work/study.
3.	क्या चल रहा है ?	क्या चल रहा है ? Literally, it means “what is moving?” But this is used to express “What’s up?” or “What is going on?”
4.	Folk tales	Each Indian festival has some sort of folk tale behind it. Mostly, it is based on religion. For example, diwali is celebrated because, it is assumed that Lord Ram returned to Ayodhya with his wife Sita and brother Lakshaman after killing the devil king Rawan. To be culturally appropriate, you should learn the folk tales behind each festivals Indian celebrates.
5.	School and Office hours.	In America, people generally go to work at 8 AM. In India and South Asia, the office starts at 10 AM. This gives enough time in the morning for morning rituals such as yoga, making break-fast, eating breakfast, and packing lunch.
6.	Daily Routine	When you ask about daily routine to Indian and South Asian, they may just talk about their work/study. They may say how long they work and study.

Extra/Optional Online Materials

History of Chai:



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1141>

Indian Mom Daily Routine:

Holi's Folk Tale:



दशहरा की कहानी:



A YouTube element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1141>

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [7.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

7.2: Review of Chapter 6

Vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1025>

Grammar

Fill in the blanks with the suitable word:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1025>

Reading/Listening

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) With your friends, please make a list of documents that you need to open a bank account.
- (b) Make a list of personal information that you need to fill up an application to open a bank account [Hint: please go online and look for an application to open a bank account].
- (c) Discuss with your teacher or an Indian/South Asian person about things that you need here to open a bank account versus in India.

Reading

बैंक में खाता खोलना

ऋतिक:	पीटर भाई, नमस्ते, क्या हाल है?	Brother Peter, namaste, how are you?
पीटर:	नमस्ते ऋतिक भाई, सब ठीक है। मगर मुझे तुम्हारी मदद चाहिए।	namaste, brother Hrithik, All is well. But, I need your help.
ऋतिक:	कहो, मैं तुम्हारी क्या मदद कर सकता हूँ ?	Tell, How can I help you?
पीटर:	मुझे एक छात्रवृत्ति मिली है। मगर मेरा बैंक में खाता नहीं है।	I have received a scholarship. But, I do not have my bank account.
ऋतिक:	बधाई हो। बैंक में खाता खोलने में, मैं तुम्हारी मदद करूँगा।	Congratulations ! I will help you to open a bank account.
पीटर:	ठीक है। धन्यवाद। मुझे क्या करना होगा ?	Okay. Thank you. What will I have to do?
ऋतिक:	कल तुम एक बैंक से खाता खोलने वाला आवेदन पत्र लाओ।	Bring an application form to open a bank account tomorrow.
पीटर:	ठीक है। मुझे और किन चीजों की ज़रूरत होगी ?	Okay. What else will I need?
ऋतिक:	तुम्हें दो फोटो, आधार कार्ड, और एक ग्वारन्टर चाहिए।	You need two photos, aadhar card, and a guarantor.
पीटर:	मेरे पास फोटो हैं। मगर मैं विदेशी हूँ। मेरे पास आधार कार्ड नहीं है।	I have photos. But I am a foreigner. I do not have a aadhar card.
ऋतिक:	कोई बात नहीं, अपना पासपोर्ट लाओ।	No worries. Bring your passport.

पीटर:	ठीक है। मगर गारंटर कौन होगा ?	Okay. But, who will be the guarantor?
ऋतिक:	मेरा बैंक में खाता है। मैं तुम्हारा गारंटर बन सकता हूँ।	I have a bank account. I can be your guarantor.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है। मुझे आज ही आवेदन पत्र ले आना चाहिए।	Wao! This is great. I should bring the application today itself.
ऋतिक:	ठीक है, हम कल मिलेंगे।	Okay. We will meet tomorrow.

Listening

बैंक में खाता खोलना

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here: <https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/1151/?p=1025>

(b) In a group of two or three, please look at the following application form to open a bank account. Please make sure that you learn all the words there and you know what information is needed. You can print this and ask your instructor to check your filled-up application form.

The form is titled 'व्यक्तिगत खाता खोलने का फार्म' (Form for opening a personal account). It includes sections for:

- Personal Details: Name, Date of Birth, Gender, Marital Status, Religion, Caste, etc.
- Address: Current and Permanent Address.
- Employment: Current Employer, Designation, Salary, etc.
- Financial Information: Monthly Income, Savings, etc.
- Declaration: A section where the applicant declares the truthfulness of the information provided.
- Signature and Stamp: Space for the applicant's signature and the bank's stamp.

(c) Please find an application form of any American bank and try to recreate that form in Hindi. [Hint: you can use the words used in the above Hindi language application].

धन्यवाद !

7.3: Reading/Listening 1- दिनचर्या

दिनचर्या “Daily routine”



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Complete the table with the things you do at the given time of any typical day.

मेरी दिनचर्या

समय “Time”	आप क्या करते/करती हैं? “What do you do?”	समय “Time”	आप क्या करते/करती हैं? “What do you do?”
6:00 AM		03:00 PM	
7:00 AM		04:00 PM	
8:00 AM		05:00 PM	
9:00 AM		06:00 PM	
10:00 AM		07:00 PM	
11:00 AM		08:00 PM	
12:00 PM		09:00 PM	
01:00 PM		10:00 PM	
02:00 PM		11:00 PM	

(b) Please learn the following vocabulary

Hindi	English	Hindi	English
-------	---------	-------	---------

सुबह <i>n.f.</i>	Morning	सवा <i>adj.</i>	1:15 AM/PM
दोपहर <i>n.f.</i>	Afternoon	डेढ़ <i>adj.</i>	1:30 AM/PM
शाम <i>n.f.</i>	Evening	ढ़ाई <i>adj.</i>	2:30 AM/PM
रात <i>n.f.</i>	Night	सवा दो <i>phrase</i>	2:15 AM/PM
दिन <i>n.m.</i>	Day	साढ़े तीन <i>phrase</i>	3:00 AM/PM
रविवार <i>n.m.</i>	Sunday	पौने चार <i>phrase</i>	03:45 AM/PM
सोमवार <i>n.m.</i>	Monday	x के पहले <i>pp.</i>	Before X
मंगलवार <i>n.m.</i>	Tuesday	x के बाद <i>pp.</i>	After X
बुधवार <i>n.m.</i>	Wednesday	सप्ताह <i>n.m.</i>	Week
गुरुवार <i>n.m.</i>	Thursday	सप्ताहांत <i>n.m.</i>	Weekend
शुक्रवार <i>n.m.</i>	Friday	महीना <i>n.m.</i>	Month
शनिवार <i>n.m.</i>	Saturday	वर्ष <i>n.m.</i> /साल <i>n.m.</i>	Year
बजे <i>n.m.</i>	O'clock	कितने बजे <i>phrase</i>	At what time
३ बजे हैं <i>phrase</i>	It is 3 o'clock.	आप x बजे क्या करते/करती हैं? <i>phrase</i>	What do you do at X o'clock?

Reading

दिनचर्या

Context: Shilpa and Peter are talking about what they do during the different times of a day.

शिल्पा:	नमस्ते पीटर, तुम क्या कर रहे हो?	Hello Peter, what are you doing?
पीटर:	नमस्ते शिल्पा, मैं अभी पढ़ाई कर रहा हूँ। मैं आम तौर से ३ बजे शाम को पढ़ाई करता हूँ। तुम क्या कर रही हो?	Hello Shilpa, I am studying right now. Generally, I study at 3 o'clock in the evening. What are you doing?
शिल्पा:	मैं अभी योग करने जा रही हूँ। तुम सुबह कब जागते हो ?	I am going to do yoga. When do you get up in the morning?
पीटर:	मैं हर दिन ५ बजे सुबह जागता हूँ। और तुम ?	I get up at 5 o'clock in the morning everyday. And you?
शिल्पा:	मैं ६ बजे जागती हूँ। तुम नाश्ता कब करते हो ?	I get up at 6 o'clock. When do you eat breakfast?
पीटर:	मैं जागने के बाद कसरत करता हूँ। मैं कसरत करने के बाद स्नान करता हूँ, उसके बाद लगभग साढ़े सात बजे नाश्ता करता हूँ। तुम नाश्ता कब करती हो ?	After waking up, I work out. After work out, I bathe, after that around 7:15, I eat breakfast. When do you eat breakfast?
शिल्पा:	मैं आठ या सवा आठ बजे नाश्ता करती हूँ। तुम शाम को चार बजे क्या करते हो?	I eat breakfast 8 or 8:15 o'clock. What do you do at 4 o'clock in the evening?
पीटर:	मैं ३ से ६ बजे तक पढ़ाई करता हूँ। और तुम ?	I study from 3 to 6 o'clock. And you?
शिल्पा:	मैं ३ से ४ बजे तक योग करती हूँ। उसके बाद थोड़ा आराम करती हूँ। तुम कब सोते हो ?	I do yoga from 3 to 4 o'clock. After that I rest a little. When do you sleep?
पीटर:	मैं करीब रात के १० बजे सोता हूँ। और तुम ?	I sleep around 10 o'clock. And you?
शिल्पा:	मैं करीब ११ बजे सोती हूँ। क्या तुम इस शनिवार या रविवार की शाम खाली हो ?	I sleep around 11 o'clock. Are you available this Saturday or Sunday evening?

पीटर:	हाँ, आम तौर पर, मैं सप्ताहांत में खाली रहता हूँ। क्यों क्या बात है ?	Yes, generally, I am available on weekend. Why, what's the matter?
शिल्पा:	मैं एक फ़िल्म देखना चाहती हूँ। अगर तुम खाली हो तो हम एक फ़िल्म देख सकते हैं।	I want to watch a film. If you are available we can watch a film.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी योजना है। हम एक हिन्दी फ़िल्म देखेंगे।	Wao/Great ! This is good plan. We will watch a Hindi film.
शिल्पा:	ठीक है।	Okay

Listening

दिनचर्या

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1039>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, please complete the following table.

वह कब _____ है ?	पीटर	शिल्पा
जागता /जागती		
नाश्ता करता/करती		
सोता/सोती		

(c) Based on your own daily routine (that you have done in pre-reading/listening activity), please talk to a friend and make a list of her/him daily routine. Please find out where your routine matches with her/him.

मेरे दोस्त की दिनचर्या

समय "Time"	आप क्या करते/करती हैं? "What do you do?"	समय "Time"	आप क्या करते/करती हैं? "What do you do?"
6:00 AM		03:00 PM	
7:00 AM		04:00 PM	
8:00 AM		05:00 PM	
9:00 AM		06:00 PM	
10:00 AM		07:00 PM	
11:00 AM		08:00 PM	
12:00 PM		09:00 PM	
01:00 PM		10:00 PM	
02:00 PM		11:00 PM	

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [7.3: Reading/Listening 1- दिनचर्या](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan](#) (Michigan State University Libraries).

7.4: Reading/Listening 2- मेरे शौक

मेरे शौक “My hobbies”



19th century fresco with Krishna and Radha riding the weird elephant with women silhouettes, Shekhawati area of India

Pre-Reading/Listening Activities:

- (a) Please make a list of your hobbies.
- (b) Make a list of things that you do during the weekend, but not on week days.

Reading

Context: Shilpa and Sangeeta talk about their weekends and their hobbies.

संगीता:	कैसी हो, शिल्पा ? सुना कि तुम और पीटर फ़िल्म देखने गये थे ।	How are you, Shilpa? I heard that you and peter went to watch a movie.
शिल्पा	मैं ठीक हूँ । धन्यवाद ! हाँ पिछले शनिवार को हम ने एक फ़िल्म देखी । तुम सप्ताहांत में क्या करती हो?	I am well. Thank you! Yes, last Saturday, we watch a movie. What do you do on weekend?
संगीता:	मैं अपने खाली समय में किताबें पढ़ती हूँ और चित्रकारी करती हूँ । तुम क्या करती हो ?	In my available time, I read books and paint. What do you do?
शिल्पा	मैं फ़िल्में देखती हूँ और टेबल टेनिस खेलती हूँ । और हाँ, मैं योग अभ्यास भी करती हूँ ।	I watch movies, and play table tennis. And, yes, I do yoga too.
संगीता:	अरे वाह ! तुम तो अपने शरीर पर बहुत ध्यान देती हो । शिल्पा, मुझे फ़िल्म की कहानी बताओ ।	Wao! You pay attention to your body. Shilpa, tell me the story of a movie.
शिल्पा	कौन सी फ़िल्म की कहानी ?	Story of which movie?
संगीता:	जो फ़िल्म तुम और पीटर देखने गये थे ।	The film that you and peter had gone to watch.

शिल्पा	अच्छा, यह एक दिलचस्प फ़िल्म थी। इस फ़िल्म में एक लड़का एक लड़की से प्यार करता है। मगर लड़की किसी और लड़के से प्यार करती है। बाद में उसे पता चलता है कि वह लड़का जिससे वह प्यार करती है वह अच्छा आदमी नहीं है। फिर वह लड़की उस लड़के के साथ शादी करती है जो उसे प्यार करता है।	Okay, This was an interesting film. In this film, a boy loves a girl. But the girl loves some other boy. After a while, she learns that he is not a good man. Then she marries the boy who loves her.
संगीता:	अरे वाह ! यह तो Love triangle लगता है।	Wao! This seems like a love triangle.
शिल्पा	संगीता, मैं भी चित्रकारी करना चाहती हूँ। क्या तुम मुझे चित्रकारी करना सिखा सकती हो ?	Sangeeta, I do want to paint. Can you teach me painting?
संगीता:	हाँ बिल्कुल, अगले रविवार को मेरे घर आ जाओ, हम एक साथ चित्रकारी करेंगे।	Yes, of course, come to my home on next Sunday, we will paint together.
शिल्पा	अच्छा।	Great.

Listening

मेरे शौक

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1065>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, make a list of Shilpa's and Sangeeta's hobbies. Additionally, ask two of your friends about their hobbies.

शौक	शिल्पा	संगीता	दोस्त १	दोस्त २
1				
2				
3				

(c) As you read/listen above how Shilpa narrated a story of a film. Please recollect a story of a movie that you have watch and write the story of that movie, then record it below and share this with your instructor for feedback.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1065>

धन्यवाद !

7.5: Reading/Listening 3- त्योहार

त्योहार “Festival”



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please make a list of your favorite festivals.
- (b) Please make a list of things that you do on your favorite festival.
- (c) Please go online, and research about story behind your favorite Indian festival.

Reading

त्योहार

Context: Peter, Shilpa, and Hrithik talk about their favorite festivals.

शिल्पा:	पीटर, तुम्हें क्रिसमस की हार्दिक शुभकामनायें ।	Peter, Merry Christmas to you.
पीटर:	धन्यवाद शिल्पा । तुम्हें भी क्रिसमस की हार्दिक शुभकामनायें । शिल्पा, क्या क्रिसमस तुम्हारा पसंदीदा त्योहार है ?	Thanks Shilpa, Merry Christmas to you too. Is Christmas your favorite festival?
शिल्पा:	नहीं, मेरा पसंदीदा त्योहार दिवाली है ।	No, My favorite festival is Diwali.
पीटर:	अच्छा, तुम दिवाली कैसे मनाती हो ?	Okay. How do you celebrate Diwali?
शिल्पा:	दिवाली के पहले, हम अपना घर साफ़ करते हैं । दिवाली की शाम, हम दीप जलाते हैं, लक्ष्मी और गणेश की पूजा करते हैं । मिठाइयाँ खाते हैं और आतिशबाज़ी करते हैं ।	Before Diwali, we clean our homes. On the evening on Diwali, we lit clay lamp and worship Lakshmi and Ganesha. We eat sweets, and do fireworks.
पीटर:	मुझे भारतीय मिठाइयाँ बहुत पसंद हैं । शिल्पा, मेरा एक सवाल है । भारतीय दिवाली क्यों मनाते हैं ?	I like Indian sweets very much. Shilpa, I have a question. Why do Indian celebrate Diwali?

शिल्पा:	ऐसा माना जाता है कि, भगवान राम रावण को मार कर जब अयोध्या आये थे तब अयोध्या के लोगों ने उनका स्वागत दीप जलाकर किया था उसी दिन से हम दिवाली मनाते हैं। पीटर भाई, ईसाई लोग क्रिसमस क्यों मनाते हो ?	It is believed that when Lord Ram returned to Ayodhya after killing Rawan, people of Ayodhya welcomed him by lighting the clay lamps. Since that day, we celebrate Diwali. Brother Peter, why do Christians celebrate Christmas.
पीटर:	यह मना जाता है कि इस दिन ईसा मसीह का जन्म हुआ था। ऋतिक भाई, तुम्हारा पसंदीदा त्योहार कौन सा है ?	It is believed that Jesus Christ was born on this day. Brother Hrithik, Which is your favorite festival?
ऋतिक:	मुझे तो छठ पूजा बहुत पसंद है।	I really like Chhath pooja.
पीटर :	मैं छठ पूजा के बारे में कुछ नहीं जानता। इसके बारे में मुझे कुछ बताओ, न।	I do not know anything about Chhath pooja. Please tell me about it.
ऋतिक:	छठ पूजा हिन्दुओं का एक बहुत ही पवित्र पर्व है। छठ पूजा में हम सूर्य भगवान की पूजा करते हैं।	Chhath pooja is a holy festival of Hindus. In Chhath pooja, we worship God sun.
पीटर:	क्या तुम मुझे छठ पूजा में अपने घर बुलाओगे ?	Will you invite me to your home on Chhath pooja?
ऋतिक:	हाँ बिल्कुल, अगले छठ पूजा में तुम मेरे घर जरूर आना।	Yes, of course, you must come to my home on next Chhath pooja.
शिल्पा:	और मैं ?	And me?
ऋतिक:	तुम्हारा भी स्वागत है।	You are also welcome.

Listening

त्योहार

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1063>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, please make a list of favorite festival of Shilpa and Hritik. Please also ask at least three of your friends about their favorite festivals and complete the following table.

	ऋतिक	शिल्पा	दोस्त १	दोस्त २	दोस्त ३
त्योहार का नाम					

(c) Please name your favorite festival. Write at least 5 sentences about what you do on that day. Additionally, write 5 sentences explaining why that festival is celebrated. After writing about your favorite festival, please record yourself here and share this with your instructor for her/his feedback.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1063>

धन्यवाद !

7.6: Study Abroad

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please make a list of places where you want to travel in America and in India.

	भारत में, आप कहाँ-कहाँ यात्रा करना चाहते हैं ? “What are the places you want to tour in India?”	अमेरिका में, आप कहाँ-कहाँ यात्रा करना चाहते हैं ? “What are the places you want to tour in America?”
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

(b) As you have planned to go five places in India, please make a list of 15-20 items in Hindi that you think you would need to pack to visit these places.

(c) As you have decided to go to five different places in India, please briefly (1-3 sentences) write why you want to visit each place.

	जगह का नाम “Name of the place”	आप वहाँ क्यों जाना चाहते/चाहती हैं? “Why do you want to go there?”
1.		
2.		
3.		

4.		
5.		

Reading

Context: Jen is talking to her mother Karen on phone. Karen is planning to come to India and go to places in India with her daughter Jen. Jen is explaining her plans.

जेन:	नमस्ते माँ, तुम कैसी हो और अभी क्या कर रही हो ?	Hello mother, how are you and what are you doing right now?
केरेन:	नमस्ते बेटी, मैं ठीक हूँ और अभी अपना सामान पैक कर रही हूँ। मैं कल सुबह के हवाई जहाज़ से भारत आ रही हूँ। तुम कैसी हो और क्या कर रही हो?	Hello daughter, I am fine and I am packing right now. I am coming to India by morning flight tomorrow. How are you and what are you doing?
जेन:	मैं भी अच्छी हूँ, माँ। मैं हमारी यात्रा की योजना बना रही हूँ।	I am well too, mother. I am making our travel plan.
केरेन:	मैं भी भारत-यात्रा के लिए बहुत उत्साहित हूँ। मुझे यात्रा की योजना के बारे में बताओ।	I am also very excited about India tour. Tell me about the travel plan.
जेन:	ठीक है। मैं तुम से दिल्ली अन्तराष्ट्रीय हवाईअड्डे पर मिलूँगी। हम दिल्ली में दो दिन रुकेंगी और दिल्ली में लाल क़िला और कुतुबमीनार देखेंगी।	Okay. I will meet you at the international airport in Delhi. We will stay in Delhi for two days and will visit Red fort and Qutub minar.
केरेन:	क्या हम जामा मस्जिद भी देखेंगी ?	Will we visit Jama masjid too?
जेन:	जी हाँ, जामा मस्जिद, लाल क़िला के पास ही है।	Yes, Jama masjid is near by the red fort.
केरेन:	बहुत अच्छा। उसके बाद हम कहाँ जायेंगी ?	Very well. Where will we go after that?
जेन:	दिल्ली के बाद हम जयपुर और उदयपुर जायेंगी। जयपुर और उदयपुर में, हम बहुत सारे क़िले देखेंगी, राजस्थानी खाना खायेंगी और खरीदारी भी करेंगी।	After Delhi, we will go to Jaipur and Udaypur. In Jaipur and Udaypur, we will visit many forts, eat Rajasthani food, and do shopping too.
केरेन:	मैंने सुना है कि राजस्थानी हस्तशिल्प बहुत मशहूर है।	I have heard that Rajasthani handicraft is very famous.
जेन:	हाँ माँ, हम राजस्थान से पंजाब जायेंगी और बाघा बॉर्डर पर हिन्दुस्तानी और पाकिस्तानी सैनिकों का परेड देखेंगी।	Yes mother, we will go to Punjab from Rajasthan and will see a parade by Indian and Pakistani soldiers
केरेन:	अरे वाह ! मैंने सुना है कि वह परेड बहुत नाटकीय है।	Wao! I have heard that the parade is very dramatic.
जेन:	हाँ, हमें बहुत मज़ा आयेंगा। उसके बाद हम अमृतसर में गोल्डन टेम्पल देखेंगी और दिल्ली वापस आयेंगी।	Yes, we will have so much fun. After that we will go to visit golden temple in Amritsar and will return to Delhi.
केरेन:	यह तो बहुत अच्छी योजना है। तुम्हें अमेरिका से कुछ चाहिए ?	This is such a good plan. Do you need anything from America?
जेन:	नहीं माँ, मुझे कुछ नहीं चाहिए। मगर हाँ, तुम गर्म कपड़े मत लाना। आजकल हिन्दुस्तान में गर्मी का मौसम है।	No mother, I do not need anything. But, please do not bring warm clothes. It is summer season in India these days.
केरेन:	ठीक है बेटी, मैं तुमसे दिल्ली हवाईअड्डे पर मिलूँगी।	Okay daughter, I will see you at Delhi airport.

Listening

Study Abroad

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1069>

(b) Based on the above reading/listening, please make a list of places Jen and Karen are planning to visit in India.

(c) Imagine that you are going for a two weeks trip in India with your best friend. Please write a detailed plan in Hindi and record your plan below. [Hint: please use future tense.]

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1069>

धन्यवाद !

7.7: Grammar- Tense and Aspect

Tense

Instructor Video: Tense and Aspect

Tense is a time of an action. In all languages, tense is categorized in three types, namely, (a) present tense, (b) past tense, and (c) future tense.

In Hindi, tense is marked with auxiliary verbs and/or morphemes attached to the verb stem, as shown below.

Past tense	Present tense	Future tense
Auxiliary verbs: था, थे, थी, थीं	Auxiliary verbs: हूँ, हो, है, हैं	Auxiliary verbs: होगा, होगा, होगी, होंगी
Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> कल बारिश हो रही थी “It was raining yesterday.” पिछले साल, मैं भारत गया था “I had gone to India last year.” 	Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> आज बारिश हो रही है “It is raining today.” मैं भारत जा रहा हूँ “I am going to India.” 	Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> कल बारिश होगी “It will rain tomorrow.” अगले साल, मैं भारत जाऊँगा “I will go to India next year.”

Aspect

Aspect shows the manner of an action. Grammatical aspects are categorized in two types, namely, (a) imperfective aspect, and (b) perfective aspect. Imperfective aspect shows that the action is not completed. Perfective aspect shows that the action is complete.

Imperfective aspect is further categorized in two types, namely, (a) habitual and (b) progressive/continuous.

All grammatical aspects in Hindi are marked as morphemes with verb stem, as shown below.

Imperfective Aspect		Perfective Aspect
Habitual	Progressive/Continuous	
Morphemes: -ता, -ते, -ती	रहा, रहे, रही	-आ, -ए, -ई, -ई
Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं किताब पढ़ता हूँ “I read a book.” सीता क्रिकेट खेलती है “Sita plays cricket.” लड़के कमरा साफ़ करते हैं “Boys clean a room.” 	Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं किताब पढ़ रहा हूँ “I am reading a book.” सीता क्रिकेट खेल रही है “Sita is playing cricket.” लड़के कमरा साफ़ कर रहे हैं “Boys are cleaning a room.” 	Examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैंने किताब पढ़ी “I read a book.” सीता ने क्रिकेट खेला “Sita played cricket.” लड़कों ने कमरा साफ़ किया “Boys cleaned a room.”

Activity

Please read these sentences carefully and identify the tense and aspect.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

धन्यवाद !

7.8: Grammar- The present and past habitual tense

The Present and Past Habitual Tense Video

Instructor Video: [The Present and Past Habitual Tense](#)

Structure

Verb stem	Habitual aspect marker	Present tense	Past tense
खा, जा	-ता/-ते/-ती	हूँ, हो, है, हैं	था, थे, थी, थीं
Example:		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं आम खाता हूँ "I eat mangoes." वह आठ बजे स्कूल जाता है "He wakes up at 8 o'clock." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं आम खाता था "I used to eat mangoes." वह आठ बजे स्कूल जाता था "He used to wake up at 8 o'clock."

Use of Habitual Aspect Marker with Different Subjects

Habitual markers (-ता, -ते, -ती) are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	-ता/-ती	हम "We"	-ते/-ती
2nd	तू "You"	-ता/-ती		NA
	तुम "You"	-ते/-ती	तुम (लोग) "You"	-ते/-ती
	आप "You"	-ते/-ती	आप (लोग) "You"	-ते/-ती
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	-ता/-ती	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	-ते/-ती

Note: When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.

Negation of Habitual Aspect

In order to change habitual aspect sentences in negative, we use the word नहीं right before the verb. When habitual sentences appear in negative, generally, the verb "to be" in present (हूँ, हो, है, हैं) are dropped. However, in the past form of verb "to be" (था, थे, थी, थीं) are not dropped.

Examples:

- लड़कियां फुटबॉल खेलती हैं | "Girls play football."
- लड़कियां फुटबॉल नहीं खेलतीं | "Girls do not play football."
- आप हर दिन अपना कमरा साफ़ करते थे | "You used to clean your room everyday."
- आप हर दिन अपना कमरा साफ़ नहीं करते थे | "You used not to clean your room everyday."

Note: Please notice the extra nasal dot in negative sentences with subject लड़कियाँ “girls.” As we drop the verb “to be,” the dot indicates the plural feminine subject in contrast to singular feminine subject.

Uses of Habitual Aspect

(a) To express routine actions

Examples:

- मैं चार बजे जागता हूँ | “I get up at 4 o'clock.”
- मैं पांच बजे चाय पीता हूँ | “I drink tea at 5 o'clock.”
- मैं आठ बजे स्कूल जाता हूँ | “I go to school at 8 o'clock.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(b) To express habitual actions

Examples:

- सीता किताबें पढ़ती है | “Sita reads books.”
- राहुल गिटार बजाता है | “Rahul plays guitar.”
- ऋतिक सिग्रेट पीता है | “Hrithik smokes.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(c) To express permanent actions

Examples:

- पीटर मिशिगन में रहता है | “Peter lives in Michigan.”
- जेन यहाँ काम करती है | “Jen works here.”
- मैं अपने शिक्षक का आदर करता हूँ | “I respect my teacher.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(d) To express general/universal truth.

Examples:

- पृथ्वी सूर्य की परिक्रमा करती है। "The earth revolves around the sun."
- आम तौर से, गुलाब लाल होते हैं। "Generally, roses are red."
- मिशिगन में, बर्फ़बारी होती है। "It snows in Michigan."

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(e) To narrate a story and to express series of events:

When narrating a story, background information is generally expressed using habitual (imperfective aspect) construction. Whereas, the foreground information is expressed using perfective aspect. Habitual construction (background information) in the story below is highlighted.

Example:

- एक जंगल में एक शेर **रहता** था। उसी जंगल में, एक चूहा भी **रहता** था। एक दिन शेर चूहे से **कहता** कि मैं तुम्हें खा जाऊँगा। चूहा **कहता** है "मुझे मत खाइए।" एक दिन शिकारी शेर को जाल में **फसाता** है तब चूहा जाल **काटता** है। इस तरह चूहा शेर की मदद **करता** है।
- "A lion lived in a forest. In the same forest, a mouse also lived. One day the lion says to the rats that I will eat you. The Rat says "please don't eat me." One day the hunter traps the lion into the net then the rat bites the net. This is how the rat helps the lion."

(f) To express impersonal sentences

Examples:

- लोग कहते हैं कि ... "People say that..."
- (आप) हिन्दी में "flower" कैसे कहते हैं ? How do you say "flower" in Hindi.
- यहाँ अच्छी चाय मिलाती है। Good tea is available here.

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(g) To express immediate future action by adding adverbs like अभी “right away,” and चलिए “let’s.”

Examples:

- मैं अभी आती हूँ | “I will come right away.”
- चलिए, एक फ़िल्म देखते हैं | “Let’s watch a film.”
- रोओ मत, माँ अभी तुम्हें खाना देती है | “Don’t cry, mother will give you food right away.”

Uses of the Past Habitual Tense

(a) The past habitual tense is generally used to express past habit, routine, permanent actions.

Examples:

- मैं पिछले साल दस बजे स्कूल जाता था | “I used to go to school at 10 o’clock last year.”
- आप हिन्दुस्तान में कहाँ रहती थीं ? “Where used you to live in India?”
- पिछले महीने तक, मेरा भाई हर दिन मुझ से बात करता था | “My brother used to talk to me everyday till last month.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Activities

(a) Please choose the correct form of habitual aspect marker based on the subject of the sentence.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1096>

(b) Please write your daily routine of this semester/year. After writing your daily routine compare it will last semester/year. [Hint: Please use present habitual for current daily routine, and use past habitual for last semester/year]

(c) Please ask your friends about their hobbies and enlist them here. [Hint: Use आप खाली समय में क्या करते/करती हैं? “What do you do

in your free time?" to ask their hobbies.]

(d) Please watch a short film, and write the story in Hindi in Hindi. After writing, please record yourself here and share your story with the instructor/any native speaker for the feedback.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1096>

धन्यवाद !

7.9: The Present and Past Progressive Tense

The Present and Past Progressive Tense Video

Instructor Video: [The Present and Past Progressive Tense](#)

Structure

Verb stem	Progressive aspect marker	Present tense	Past tense
खा, जा	रहा, रहे, रही	हूँ, हो, है, हैं	था, थे, थी, थीं
Example:		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं काम कर रहा हूँ "I am working." वह स्कूल जा रहा है "He is going to school." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> मैं काम कर रहा था "I was working." वह स्कूल जा रहा था "He was going to school."

Use of Progressive Aspect Marker with Different Subjects

Progressive markers (रहा, रहे, रही) are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	रहा/रही	हम "We"	रहे/रही
2nd	तू "You"	रहा/रही		NA
	तुम "You"	रहे/रही	तुम (लोग) "You"	रहे/रही
	आप "You"	रहे/रही	आप (लोग) "You"	रहे/रही
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	रहा/रही	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	रहे/रही

Note: When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.

Negation of Progressive Aspect

In order to change progressive aspect sentences in negative, we use the word नहीं right before the verb. When progressive sentences appear in negative, generally, the verb "to be" in present (हूँ, हो, है, हैं) are dropped, but not in the past (था, थे, थी, थीं). Negative of past tense keeps the past form of the verb "to be"

Examples:

- लड़कियां फुटबॉल खेल रही हैं | "Girls are playing football."
- लड़कियां फुटबॉल नहीं खेल रही हैं | "Girls are not playing football."
- आप अपना कमरा साफ़ कर रहे थे | "You were cleaning your room."
- आप अपना कमरा साफ़ नहीं कर रहे थे | "You were not cleaning your room."

Note: Please notice the extra nasal dot “रहीं” in negative sentences with subject लड़कियाँ “girls.” As we drop the verb “to be,” the dot indicates the plural feminine subject in contrast to singular feminine subject.

Uses of Progressive Aspect

(a) To express action happening at the time of speaking.

Examples:

- बारिश हो रही है | “It is raining.”
- सब लोग सो रहे हैं | “Everyone is sleeping.”
- सीता और गीता एक फ़िल्म देख रही थीं | “Sita and Geeta were watching a film.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(b) To express temporary action. Generally, adverbs like, आजकल “these days,” and अभी “right now” are used.

Examples:

- सीता अभी किताब पढ़ रही है | “Sita is reading a book right now.”
- राहुल आजकल गिटार बजा रहा है | “Rahul is playing a guitar these days.”
- ऋतिक अमेरिका में रह रहा था | “Hrithik was living/staying in America.”

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

(c) To express planned future action. The sentences must have future adverbs of time.

Examples:

- पीटर अगले महीने हिन्दुस्तान जा रहा है | “Peter is going to India next month.”
- जेन कल काम कर रही है | “Jen is working tomorrow.”
- मैं अगले हफ़्ते एक फ़िल्म देख रही हूँ | “I am watching a film next week.”

Note: To express planned future action using progressive aspect is only possible in present tense. Past tense of progressive aspect cannot express planned future action.

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative and past tense.

	Examples	Negative	Past tense
1.			
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			

Activities

(a) Please choose the correct progressive aspect markers based on the subject of the sentence.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1110>

(b) Please write 5 sentences explaining what you were doing last weekend.

1.	पिछले सप्ताहांत, मैं _____ था/थी ।
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

(c) Please write 5 sentences explaining what you are doing next weekend.

1.	अगले सप्ताहांत, मैं _____ हूँ ।
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	

धन्यवाद !

7.10: Grammar- Simple Future Tense

Simple Future Tense Video

Lecture: [The Simple Future Tense](#)

Structure

Verb stem + future marker

Use of Future Markers with Different Subjects

Future markers are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	-ऊँगा/-ऊँगी	हम "We"	-एँगे/-एँगी
2nd	तू "You"	-एगा/-एगी		NA
	तुम "You"	-ओगे/-ओगी	तुम (लोग) "You"	-ओगे/-ओगी
	आप "You"	-एँगे/-एँगी	आप (लोग) "You"	-एँगे/-एँगी
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	-एगा/-एगी	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	-एँगे/-एँगी

Note:

- (a) When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.
- (b) When the verb stem ends in consonant then vowels of the aspect markers are marked as dependent vowels. For example: बोलूँगी, पढ़ेगा, खेलेंगे, बोलोगी, etc.
- (c) When the verb stem ends in vowel then the aspect markers ऊँगा/ऊँगी and ओगा/ओगी are just attached. For example: जाऊँगी, आओगे, खाऊँगा, etc.
- (d) When the verb stem ends in vowel then the aspect markers एगा/एगी and एँगे/एँगी are attached using a semi-consonant य. For example: जायेगा, आयेंगी, खायेंगी, etc.

Negation of Progressive Aspect

In order to change progressive aspect sentences in negative, we use the word नहीं right before the verb.

Examples:

- लड़कियां फुटबॉल खेलेंगी | "Girls will play football."
- लड़कियां फुटबॉल नहीं खेलेंगी | "Girls will not play football."
- आप अपना कमरा साफ़ करेंगे | "You will clean your room."
- आप अपना कमरा साफ़ नहीं करेंगे | "You will not clean your room."

Uses of Future Tense

(a) To express future actions.

Examples:

- कल बारिश होगी | "It will rain tomorrow."
- सब लोग घर जायेंगे | "Everyone will go home."
- सीता और गीता एक फ़िल्म देख देखेंगी | "Sita and Geeta will watch a film."

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative too.

	Examples	Negative
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

(b) To express assumption/presumption

Examples:

- शायद कल बर्फ़बारी होगी | "Perhaps, it will snow tomorrow."
- अगले साल, मैं हिन्दुस्तान जाऊँगी | "Next year, I will go to India."
- कल सीता और गीता मुझसे मिलेंगी | "Sita and Geeta will meet me tomorrow."

Activity:

Please add five more examples here. After writing your examples please change your sentences in negative too.

	Examples	Negative
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		

Activities

(a) Please choose the correct form of future aspect markers based on the subject of the sentence.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1124>

धन्यवाद !

8: TALKING ABOUT THE PAST AND COMPLETED ACTIONS

8.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

8.2: Review of Chapter 7

8.3: Reading/Listening 1- छुट्टियों के बाद

8.4: Reading/Listening 2- पत्र लेखन

8.5: Reading/Listening 3- शुभकामनाएँ

8.6: Study Abroad

8.7: Grammar- Perfective Aspect

8.8: Grammar- कर Construction

8.9: Conjunct Verb

8.10: Subjunctive

8.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials

CULTURAL NOTES

	Topics	Explanations
1.	Good Morning/Afternoon/Evening/ Night/Day	In English, we generally wish each other good morning, good afternoon, good evening, good night, and good day. But in India and South Asian, native speakers, generally speaking, do not wish each other in these ways. People generally say नमस्ते, प्रणाम, राम-राम, etc.
2.	Instruction and polite request	Generally, when you learn Hindi, your instructor, including me, teaches you to use आप form of imperative construction to express polite request/instruction. However, when you travel to India and South Asia, native speakers typically use subjunctive form to express polite request/instruction. You can check if you watch any recipe video by a native Hindi speaker. All the written instruction on road-side and elsewhere in Hindi are also written in subjunctive.
3.	Conjunct Verb	In this chapter, you learned about conjunct verb. You learned that how we can take noun/adjective/adverb and add करना/होना to form a conjunct verb. However, these days, the influence of English on Hindi language is significant. You may hear native speakers using conjunct verbs with English nouns/adjectives/adverbs + करना For example: text/message/phone/email/google + करना
4.	Letter writing	Letter writing was very prominent in India. However, after the new development in technologies, and telecommunication boom, people bought mobile phones and now the letter writing does not happen very much.
5.	Festivals	Indian festivals can be divided in two parts, namely, national festival, and regional festival. National festivals are independence day (August 15th), republic day (January 26th), and Gandhi's birthday (October 2nd). On these public/national festivals, the whole country enjoys break from work. All the offices, colleges, schools, and other institutions are closed. A few examples of regional festivals are holi, pongal, baisakhi, onam, etc. On regional festival day, certain regions of the country observe break from work.

EXTRA/OPTIONAL MATERIALS

Holi festival:

1. [Holi Pagri](#)
2. [Holi Lathmar](#)
3. [Holi Baithi 1](#)
4. [Holi Baithi 2](#)

Hindi song that uses beautiful mixture of subjunctive and future in conditional sentences.

[Agar tum mil jao](#)

धन्यवाद !

This page titled [8.1: Cultural Notes and Extra/Optional Online Materials](#) is shared under a [CC BY 4.0](#) license and was authored, remixed, and/or curated by [Rajiv Ranjan \(Michigan State University Libraries\)](#).

8.2: Review of Chapter 7

Vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1353>

Reading and Grammar

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1353>

Answer the following questions based on on the above reading.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1353>

धन्यवाद !

8.3: Reading/Listening 1- छुट्टियों के बाद

छुट्टियों के बाद “After the vacation”



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please recollect the memories of your last trip and make a list of the places you went, food that you ate, and things that you did.
- (b) Please share your vacation details with your friend, and ask her/his.

Reading

Context: Hritik, Shilpa, and Peter meet in school after the summer vacation.

पीटर:	नमस्ते शिल्पा, तुम कैसी हो ?	Hello Shilpa, How are you?
शिल्पा:	मैं अच्छी हूँ। तुम कैसे हो?	I am well. How are you?
पीटर:	मैं भी अच्छा हूँ। तुम्हारी गर्मी की छुट्टियाँ कैसी थीं ?	I, too, am well. How was your summer vacation?
शिल्पा:	मेरी गर्मी की छुट्टियाँ बहुत अच्छी थीं। मैं अपने परिवार के साथ हैदराबाद गयी थी।	My summer vacation was very good. I went to Hyderabad with my family.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! हैदराबाद में तुम लोगों ने क्या - क्या किया?	Oh wao! What did you do in Hyderabad?
शिल्पा:	हम लोग वहाँ एक सप्ताह रहे। हम ने शहर देखा। हम चार मीनार, गोलकुंडा फोर्ट, और रामू जी फ़िल्म सिटी गए। हम ने कई तरह की बिरयानियाँ खाईं। तुम गर्मी की छुट्टियों में कहाँ गए और क्या - क्या किया ?	We stayed there for a week. We saw the city. We went to Char minar, Golkunda fort, and Ramu Ji film city. We are different types of biryani. Where did you go in summer vacation and what did you do?
पीटर:	मैं अपने माता - पिता के घर, गोवा गया था। मैंने उनके साथ कुछ समय बिताया। मैंने घर की मरम्मत करने में उनकी मदद की।	I went to my parent's house in Goa. I spent some times with them. I help them fixing their house.

शिल्पा:	अरे वाह ! और ऋतिक तुम ने गर्मी की छुट्टियों में क्या किया ?	Oh wao! and Hritik, what did you do during the summer vacation?
ऋतिक:	मैं घर पर ही था मैंने खाना पकाना सिखा	I was at home. I learnt how to cook.
पीटर:	अरे वाह ! यह तो बहुत अच्छी बात है अब तो ऋतिक हमारे लिए खाना बना सकता है	Oh wao! This is great. Now Hritik can cook food for us.
ऋतिक:	हाँ, क्यों नहीं ?	Yes, why not?

Listening

छुट्टियों के बाद

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your vocabulary learning:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1355>

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1355>

धन्यवाद !

8.4: Reading/Listening 2- पत्र लेखन

पत्र लेखन “Letter writing”



Pre-Reading/Listening Activity

(a) In a group, please share your letter writing experience. Please also share who you want to write a letter today, and what you want to write about.

(b) In a group, please discuss how mode of communication changes due to new technological developments like facebook, twitter, and emails, etc.

(c) Please learn the following vocabulary

दोस्त <i>n.m./f.</i>	Friend	x की तरफ़ <i>pp.</i>	Towards X
आशा <i>n.f.</i>	Hope	तेज़ी से <i>adv.</i>	Fast
विशेष <i>adj.</i>	Special	दौड़ना <i>v.i.</i>	To run
कारण <i>n.m.</i>	Reason	बचाना <i>v.t.</i>	To save
वापस <i>adv.</i>	Return	उठाना <i>v.t.</i>	To lift
बिताना <i>v.i.</i>	To spend	भागना <i>v.i.</i>	To run away
बाहर <i>adj.</i>	Out	पैर <i>n.m.</i>	Leg
घूमना <i>v.i.</i>	To roam around	फंसना <i>v.t.</i>	To be stuck
पिछला <i>adj.</i>	Last	गिरना <i>v.i.</i>	To fall
चचेरी बहन <i>n.f.</i>	Paternal uncle's daughter	पड़ना <i>v.i.</i>	To lie down
शादी <i>n.f.</i>	Marriage	सुरक्षित <i>adj.</i>	Safe
खुश <i>adj.</i>	Happy	दर्द <i>n.m.</i>	Pain

तैयारी <i>n.f.</i>	Preparation	महशूस करना <i>v.t.</i>	To feel
धूम-धाम <i>adj.</i>	Grandeur	अस्पताल <i>n.m.</i>	Hospital
खरीदना <i>v.t.</i>	To buy	पहुँचना <i>v.t.</i>	To arrive
गोलगप्पा <i>n.m.</i>	An Indian snacks	हड्डी <i>n.f.</i>	Bone
देखना <i>v.t.</i>	To see	टूटना <i>v.i.</i>	Break
छोटा <i>adj.</i>	Small	इलाज़ करना <i>v.t.</i>	To treatment
बच्चा <i>n.m.</i>	Child	आराम <i>n.m.</i>	Rest
सड़क <i>n.f.</i>	Road	हिदायत देना <i>v.t.</i>	To instruct
पार करना <i>v.t.</i>	To cross	ख्याल रखना <i>v.t.</i>	To take care

Reading

कानपुर

१२ जनवरी, २०२१

प्रिय दोस्त शिल्पा, पीटर, और ऋतिक,

नमस्ते !

आशा है कि तुम लोग ठीक होगे, और तुम्हारी गर्मी की छुट्टियाँ अच्छी रही होगी। पत्र लिखने का विशेष कारण यह है कि मैं इस सेमेस्टर में स्कूल वापस नहीं आ सकती।

मैं गर्मी की छुट्टी में अपने घर कानपुर आयी थी। मैं अपने परिवार के साथ अच्छा समय बिता रही थी। हम लोगों ने बहुत अच्छा खाना खाया, और कई बार बाहर घूमने भी गये। पिछले सप्ताह, मेरी एक चचेरी बहन की शादी थी और हम सब लोग बहुत खुश थे। पूरा परिवार एक साथ था और हम शादी की तैयारी बहुत धूम-धाम से कर रहे थे। शादी के दो दिन पहले, मैं कुछ कपड़े खरीदने बाज़ार गयी थी। खरीदारी करके मैं एक गोलगप्पे वाले के पास गोलगप्पे खा रही थी। मैंने देखा की एक छोटा बच्चा सड़क पार कर रहा है और एक मोटर साइकिल उसकी तरफ़ तेज़ी से आ रही है। मैं दौड़ कर उसे बचाने गयी। मैं बच्चे को उठाके भागी, मगर मेरा पैर किसी चीज़ से फँस गया और मैं गिर पड़ी। हम दोनों सड़क के किनारे पड़े थे। बच्चा सुरक्षित था, मगर मैंने अपने पैर में दर्द महशूस किया। बाद में, जब मैं अस्पताल पहुँची तो पता लगा कि मेरे दाहिने पैर की हड्डी टूट गयी है। डॉक्टर ने मेरा इलाज़ किया और तीन महीने आराम की हिदायत दी। अब मैं घर पर हूँ और अच्छी हूँ। मैंने अध्यापक जी को भी पत्र लिखा है। अब मैं तुम लोगों से अगले सेमेस्टर में मिलूँगी।

अच्छा, अब मैं ज़्यादा क्या लिखूँ। तुम लोग अपना ख्याल रखना और मुझे पत्र लिखते रहना।

तुम्हारी दोस्त,

विद्या

Listening

पत्र लेखन

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Please check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1357>

(b) Please answer the following questions based on the above letter.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1357>

(c) Please follow the patten of the above letter and write a letter to your friend explaining one recent incident that you witnessed.

धन्यवाद !

8.5: Reading/Listening 3- शुभकामनाएँ

शुभकामनाएँ “Well Wishes”



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

- (a) Please search and make a list of national holidays that are celebrated in India and in America.
- (b) Please discuss how you wish each other on national holidays and try to learn those wishes in Hindi.
- (c) Please learn the following vocabulary

स्वतंत्रता दिवस <i>n.m.</i>	Independence day	क्योंकि <i>conj.</i>	Because
हार्दिक <i>adj.</i>	Hearty	राष्ट्रीय <i>adj.</i>	National
शुभकामनाएँ <i>n.f.</i>	Congratulations	त्योहार <i>n.m.</i>	Festival
मनाना <i>v.t.</i>	To celebrate	जगह <i>n.f.</i>	Place
कुछ <i>pron., adj., & adv.</i>	a few/some	प्रवेश <i>n.m.</i>	Entry
ऐतिहासिक <i>adj.</i>	Historical	निःशुल्क <i>adj.</i>	Free
स्थान <i>n.m.</i>	Place	क्षेत्रीय <i>adj.</i>	Regional
शायद <i>adv.</i>	Perhaps	गणतंत्रता दिवस <i>n.m.</i>	Republic day
बताना <i>v.t.</i>	To tell	गाँधी जयन्ती <i>n.f.</i>	Gandhi's birthday
कोई <i>pron. & adj.</i>	Someone	खुशी <i>adj.</i>	Happiness
योजना <i>n.f.</i>	Plan	जन्मदिन <i>n.m.</i>	Birthday
आराम करना <i>v.t.</i>	To rest	मुबारक <i>adj.</i>	Congratulations

Reading

शुभकामनाएँ “Well Wishes”

Context: Hritik, Vidya, and Peter are talking on the independence day about national holidays in India.

पीटर:	नमस्ते ऋतिक, स्वतंत्रता दिवस की हार्दिक शुभकामनाएँ !	Hello Hritik, happy independence day!
ऋतिक:	धन्यवाद पीटर भाई ! तुम्हें भी स्वतंत्रता दिवस की हार्दिक शुभकामनाएँ ! तुम स्वतंत्रता दिवस कैसे मनाओगे ?	Thanks brother Peter. Happy independence day to you too! How will you celebrate the independence day?
पीटर:	मैं अभी इंडिया गेट से स्वतंत्रता दिवस का परेड देख कर आया हूँ। इसके बाद मैं और मेरे कुछ दोस्त दिल्ली के ऐतिहासिक स्थान देखने जायेंगे। उसके बाद हम शायद बाहर खाना खाएँ। तुम क्या करोगे ?	I am just coming from India gate after watching independence day's parade. After this, Me and a few of my friends will go to visit some historical places. After that, perhaps, we might eat out. What will you do?
ऋतिक:	क्या बताऊँ? मेरी कोई योजना नहीं है। शायद, मैं घर जाके सोऊँ।	What to tell? I have no plans. Perhaps, I might go home and sleep.
पीटर:	अगर तुम चाहो तो हमारे साथ चल सकते हो।	If you want you can come with us.
ऋतिक:	नहीं दोस्त, मैं आज आराम करूँगा। मगर यह तो बताओ कि तुम लोग आज ऐतिहासिक स्थान देखने क्यों जा रहे हो ?	No friend, I will rest today. But tell me why you all are going to visit historical places today.
पीटर:	क्योंकि हर राष्ट्रीय त्योहार में इन जगहों पर प्रवेश निःशुल्क होता है।	Because entry is free at all these places on national festival/holidays.
ऋतिक:	अरे वाह ! इंडिया में और कौन - कौन से राष्ट्रीय त्योहार हैं ?	Oh Wao! What are the other national festivals in India.
पीटर:	हिन्दुस्तान में कई क्षेत्रीय त्योहार हैं, मगर राष्ट्रीय त्योहार सिर्फ़ तीन हैं - स्वतंत्रता दिवस (15 अगस्त), गणतंत्रता दिवस (26 जनवरी), और गाँधी जयन्ती (2 अक्टूबर)।	There are many regional festival/holiday, but there are only three national festivals/holidays - independence day (15 August), republic day (26 January), and Gandhi's birthday (2nd October).
ऋतिक:	बहुत अच्छा ! शायद, मैं भी 2 अक्टूबर को इन जगहों पर जाऊँ।	Very well ! Perhaps, I too will go to these places on 2nd October.
पीटर:	विद्या, आज तुम उदास क्यों लग रही हो ? क्या तुम्हें स्वतंत्रता दिवस की खुशी नहीं है ?	Vidya, why are you looking sad today? Are you not happy on independence day?
विद्या:	नहीं नहीं, ऐसी कोई बात नहीं है। मगर आज मेरा जन्मदिन भी है और सब मुझे स्वतंत्रता दिवस की शुभकामनाएँ दे रहे हैं, जन्मदिन की नहीं।	No No, it is not like that. But today is my birthday too, and every one is wishing me happy independence day, and not happy birthday.
ऋतिक:	आज तुम्हारा जन्मदिन है? जन्मदिन की हार्दिक शुभकामनाएँ विद्या ! चलो आज हम सब तुम्हारा जन्मदिन मनायेंगे।	Today is your birthday? Happy birthday Vidya! Let's celebrate your birthday together.
पीटर:	जन्मदिन मुबारक हो, विद्या !	Happy birthday Vidya!
विद्या:	धन्यवाद ! तुम लोगों को भी स्वतंत्रता दिवस की शुभकामनाएँ।	Thanks! Happy independence day to you all.

Listening

शुभकामनाएँ

Post-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) Check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1359>

(b) Please answer the following questions:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1359>

(c) Writing/Speaking

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1359>

धन्यवाद !

8.6: Study Abroad

Study Abroad Reading/Listening Activity



Pre-Reading/Listening Activities

(a) In a group, please discuss your experience of study abroad. If you have not participated in any study abroad program then please discuss where you want to go and what you are planning to do to participate in your dream study abroad.

(b) In a group, please discuss the importance of study abroad in your overall education at the college level. Please make a list of 7-10 benefits. Additionally, if in the discussion some negative point comes up please also list them.

(c) Please learn the following vocabulary

आदरणीय <i>adj.</i>	Respected	भाग्यशाली <i>adj.</i>	Fortunate	आकर्षित करना <i>v.t.</i>	To attract
माँ <i>n.f.</i>	Mother	x के साथ <i>pp.</i>	With x	राज्य <i>n.m.</i>	State
आशा <i>n.f.</i>	Hope	रहना <i>v.i.</i>	To stay	अलग <i>adj.</i>	Different/Separate
कुशलता <i>n.f.</i>	Well, efficient	अवसर मिलना <i>v.i.</i>	To get an opportunity	अनोखी <i>adj.</i>	Unique
आगे <i>adv.</i>	Ahead	मदद करना <i>v.t.</i>	To help	मानना <i>v.t.</i>	To suppose/To agree
पत्र <i>n.m.</i>	Letter	छोड़ना <i>v.t.</i>	To leave	देश <i>n.m.</i>	Country
विशेष <i>adj.</i>	Special	थोड़ा <i>adj.</i>	A little	आम तौर से/पर <i>adv.</i>	Generally
कारण <i>n.m.</i>	Reason	मुश्किल <i>adj.</i>	Difficult	बहुभाषी <i>adj.</i>	Multilingual
पढ़ाई <i>n.f.</i>	Study	लगना <i>v.i.</i>	To feel/appear	मिठाई <i>n.f.</i>	Sweets
पूरा होना <i>v.i.</i>	To be completed	समझना <i>v.i.</i>	To understand	त्योहार <i>n.m.</i>	Festival
वापस <i>adv.</i>	Return	हृदय <i>n.m.</i>	Heart	कपड़ा <i>n.m.</i>	Cloth

जब तब... <i>conj.</i>	When....then...	कोशिश करना	To try	शायद <i>adv.</i>	Perhaps
पहली बार <i>adv.</i>	First time	ऐतिहासिक <i>adj.</i>	Historical	शीघ्र <i>adv.</i>	Soon
भाषा <i>n.f.</i>	Language	धार्मिक <i>adj.</i>	Religious	अवश्य <i>adv.</i>	Certainly
संस्कृति <i>n.f.</i>	Culture	पर्यटन <i>n.m.</i>	Tourism	बताना <i>v.t.</i>	To tell
x के बारे में <i>pp.</i>	About x	स्थल <i>n.m.</i>	Place	प्रणाम <i>n.m.</i>	Hello/Bye
जानकारी <i>n.f.</i>	Information	यात्रा <i>n.f.</i>	Travel	प्यार <i>n.m.</i>	Love
बहुत <i>adj. & adv.</i>	Much/Very	विविधता <i>n.f.</i>	Diversity	बेटी <i>n.f.</i>	Daughter

Reading

Context: Jen has complete her study abroad in India and now planning to go back to America. Her teacher asked her to write a letter to her mother in Hindi explaining her experience and her travel plan.

दिल्ली

जनवरी १७, २०२१

आदरणीय माँ,

नमस्ते !

आशा है कि आप कुशलता से होंगी। मैं भी कुशलता से हूँ। आगे पत्र लिखने का विशेष कारण यह है कि मेरी यहाँ की पढ़ाई पूरी हो गयी है और अब मैं वापस घर आ रही हूँ।

जब मैं पहली बार भारत आयी थी तब मुझे यहाँ की भाषा और संस्कृति के बारे में कोई अधिक जानकारी नहीं थी। मगर मैं बहुत भाग्यशाली थी कि मुझे कमला जी और उनके परिवार के साथ रहने का अवसर मिला। कमला जी और उनके परिवार ने मेरी बहुत मदद की। अब उनको छोड़ कर अमेरिका आना थोड़ा मुश्किल लग रहा है। भारत में, मैंने हिन्दी की पढ़ाई की और यहाँ के संस्कृति को समझने की पूरे हृदय से कोशिश की। मैंने कई ऐतिहासिक, धार्मिक, और पर्यटन स्थलों की यात्रा भी की। भारत की विविधतायें मुझे बहुत आकर्षित करती हैं। यहाँ के हर राज्य में अनेक भाषायें बोली जाती हैं और हर राज्य की अपनी अलग और अनोखी संस्कृति है। हर राज्य मानो एक अलग देश हो। भारतीय आम तौर से बहुभाषी होते हैं। भारतीय मिठाइयाँ, त्योहार, और कपड़े, मुझे बहुत पसंद हैं। शायद, मैं फिर से भारत आऊँ।

मेरी अमेरिका की हवाई टिकट २५ जनवरी की है। मैं दिल्ली से पेरिस, और पेरिस से शिकागो तक की यात्रा २० घंटे में पूरी करूँगी। मुझे बहुत खुशी है कि मैं आप से शीघ्र मिलूँगी। अगर आपको कुछ भारतीय चीज़ें चाहिए तो मुझे अवश्य बताइये।

आगे क्या लिखूँ, पिता जी को मेरा प्रणाम और छोटी बहन को प्यार।

आपकी बेटी,

जेन

Listening

जेन का पत्र

Post-Reading/Listening Activities:

(a) Please check your vocabulary

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1361>

(b) Please answer the following questions.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:
<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1361>

(c) Based on the above pre-reading/listening discussion and letter by Jen, please write a letter to your one of your family members talking about your experience of your study abroad, or place you want to go for study abroad.

धन्यवाद !

8.7: Grammar- Perfective Aspect

Perfective Aspect Video

Instructor Video: [Perfective Aspect](#)

Use of Perfective Markers with Different Subjects

Future markers are used based on the number, person and gender features of the agreeing subject.

Person	Singular Pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine	Plural pronoun	Habitual markers Masculine/Feminine
1st	मैं "I"	-आ/ई	हम "We"	-ए/ई
2nd	तू "You"	-आ/ई		
	तुम "You"	-ए/ई	तुम (लोग) "You"	-ए/ई
	आप "You"	-ए/ई	आप (लोग) "You"	-ए/ई
3rd	यह/वह "S/he," and singular noun	-आ/ई	ये/वे "They," and plural nouns	-ए/ई

Notes:

- (a) When subject of a sentence is of mixed gender please use plural masculine aspect marker.
- (b) When the verb stem ends in consonant then vowels of the aspect markers are marked as dependent vowels. For example: बोला/बोली, पढ़े/पढ़ी, खेले/खेली, etc.
- (c) When the verb stem ends in vowel then the aspect markers -आ/-ए are attached using a semi-consonant य. For example: गाया/गायी, आया/आयी, खाये/खायी, etc. Additionally, when the verb stem ends in long ii (ई), it changes in short i (इ) before adding perfective marker, using the semi-vowel य. For example: सिया/सिये/सी/सीं, पिया/पिये/पी/पीं, etc.
- (d) When the verb stem ends in long uu (ऊ), it changes in short u (उ) before adding perfective marker, without using the semi-vowel य. For example: छुआ/छुए/छुई/छुई, etc.

Irregular Verbs in Perfective Aspect

Verb	-आ	-ए	-इ	-ई
जाना "To go"	गया	गये/गए	गयी/गई	गयीं/गईं
करना "To do"	किया	किये/किए	की	कीं
होना "To be/happen"	हुआ	हुये/हुए	हुई	हुईं
लेना "To take"	लिया	लिये/लिए	ली	लीं
देना "To give"	दिया	दिये/दिए	दी	दीं

Perfective Aspect with Intransitive Verbs

We have learned that main verb can be classified in three categories (a) intransitive verb, (b) transitive verb, and (c) ditransitive verb. The structure of perfective aspect for the intransitive verbs is different from the structure of the transitive and the ditransitive verbs.

We also learn that intransitive verb is a verb that requires only one noun/pronoun in a complete sentence and that noun/pronoun can be either the subject or the object of that complete sentence.

Verb agreement: As the intransitive verb requires only one noun/pronoun that can act like a subject or an object, the verb agrees with subject or object, whichever is available in a sentence.

Perfective aspect with Intransitive Verbs in Three Tenses

Simple perfect	Past perfect	Present perfect	Future perfect	Remarks
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा "He ran." आप सोयी "You slept." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा था "He had run." आप सोयी थीं "You had slept." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा है "He has run." आप सोयी हैं "You have slept" 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> वह दौड़ा होगा "He would have run." आप सोयी होंगी "" 	Subject-Verb Agreement: वह "He" and आप "You" are subject of these sentences. You ask question "Who ran?" or "Who slept?" What you receive as an answer is an subject.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेन पहुँची "Train arrived." पत्ते गिरे "Leaves fell." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेन पहुँची थी "Train has arrived." पत्ते गिरे थे "Leaves had fallen." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेन पहुँची है "Train has arrived." पत्ते गिरे हैं "Leaves have fallen." 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ट्रेन पहुँची होगी "Train would have arrived." पत्ते गिरे होंगे "Leaves would have fallen." 	Object-Verb Agreement: Train and Leaves are object of these sentences. You ask question "What" arrived?" or "What fell?" What you receive as an answer is an object.

Activity 1

Please write two sentences in perfective aspect using the following intransitive verbs.

Intransitive verbs	Sentences
जाना "to go"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2.
आना "To come"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2.
बैठना "To sit"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2.
सोना "To sleep"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2.

टहलना "To stroll"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
गिरना "To fall"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
दौड़ना "To run"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
टूटना "To be broken"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
रोना "To cry/weep"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
हँसना "To laugh"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
पहुँचना "To arrive"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.

Perfective Aspect with Transitive and Ditransitive Verbs

We have learned that transitive verb is a verb that requires two nouns/pronouns in a complete sentence where one noun/pronoun has to be the subject and other noun/pronoun has to be the object of a complete sentence.

Ditransitive verb is a verb that requires three nouns/pronouns in a complete sentence where one noun/pronoun has to be the subject and other noun/pronoun has to be the indirect object and yet another noun/pronoun has to be the direct object of a complete sentence.

Use of ने

When transitive and ditransitive verbs appears in perfective aspect, the ergative case marker -ने has come with the subject of the sentence. The subject of the transitive and ditransitive verbs in perfective aspect has to be in oblique form because of the appearance of the ergative case marker -ने.

Oblique Form of Hindi Pronouns with Ergative Case Marker -ने

Direct Pronoun	Oblique form of pronoun with -ने	Direct Pronoun	Oblique form of pronoun with -ने
मैं "I"	मैंने	हम "We"	हमने
तू "You"	तूने	तुम "You"	तुमने
आप "You"	आपने	यह "S/he, This"	इसने

वह "S/he, That"	उसने	ये "They, These"	इन्होंने
वे "They, Those"	उन्होंने	कौन "Who (singular)"	किसने
कौन "Who (Plural)"	किन्होंने	proper noun	proper noun ने

Note:

There are a few transitive verbs that do not use the subject with ने marking. These verbs are लाना "to bring," भूलना "to forget," बोलना "to speak."

Verb-Agreement of Transitive and Ditransitive Verbs in the Perfective Aspect

Object-Verb Agreement

- As the subject of the transitive and ditransitive verbs in the perfective aspect has to have ergative case marker -ने, it blocks the subject-verb agreement. So the verb agrees with object.
- For examples:
 - मैंने खाना खाया | "I ate food." (Here खाया is agreeing with the object खाना which is masculine, singular)
 - सीता ने कपड़े खरीदे | "Sita bought clothes." (Here खरीदे is agreeing with the object कपड़े which is masculine, plural)
 - राम ने रोटी खायी | "Ram ate a bread." (Here खायी is agreeing with the object रोटी which is feminine, singular)
 - उन्होंने राधा को फूल दिया | "They gave Radha a flower." (Here दिया is agreeing with the object फूल which is masculine, singular. Please also note that the indirect object राधा is also marked with -को, and hence cannot agree with the verb.)
 - पीटर ने ऋतिक को किताबें दीं | "Peter gave books to Hritik." (Here दीं is agreeing with the object किताबें which is feminine, plural. Please also note that the indirect object ऋतिक is also marked with -को, and hence cannot agree with the verb.)

Default Agreement

- When the subject and the object both are marked by case markers ने and को/से respectively, the verb of a sentence does not have any noun/pronoun to agree with. In this cases, verb will always take third person, singular, masculine perfect aspect marking which is also called default marking.
- For examples:
 - सीता ने राधा को मारा | "Sita beat up Radha." (Here सीता and राधा both are feminine but the verb मारा is in 3rd person singular masculine form, because of the default agreement.)
 - अध्यापक ने छात्रों से कहा | "Teacher said to the students." (Here अध्यापक is 3rd person singular honorific, and छात्रों is masculine plural, but the verb कहा is in 3rd person singular masculine form, because of the default agreement.)
 - लोगों ने चोर को पकड़ा | "People caught a thief." (Here लोगों is 3rd person plural, and चोर is masculine singular, the verb पकड़ा is in 3rd person singular masculine form, because of the default agreement, and not because of चोर.)

Activity 2

Please write two sentences in perfective aspect using the following transitive and ditransitive verbs.

Transitive verbs	Sentences
खाना "To eat"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 2.

पढ़ना "To study/read"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
लिखना "To write"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
पूछना "To ask"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
पढ़ाना "To teach"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
कहना "To say"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
बताना "To tell"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
खोलना "To open"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
तोड़ना "To break"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
सोचना "To think"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
देखना "To watch/see"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.

Negation of Perfective Aspect

In order to change the perfective aspect sentences in negative, we use the word नहीं right before the main verb.

Examples:

- मैं स्कूल नहीं गया/गयी | "I did not go to school."
- हमने खाना नहीं खाया है | "We did not eat food."
- माँ ने बच्चों को मिठाइयाँ नहीं दीं | "Mother did not give sweets to the children."
- अध्यापक ने छात्रों को कुछ नहीं पढ़ाया था | "Teacher had taught nothing to the students."

Uses of the Perfective Aspect

Use of Simple Perfective Aspect

Unlike the habitual past tense which expresses the routine, habitual, and permanent actions in the past, the simple perfective aspect expresses one completed action. Past adverb of time can be used in a simple perfective aspect sentence.

For examples:

- कल मैं दस किलोमीटर दौड़ी | "Yesterday, I ran 10 kilometers."
- पिछले महीने, पिता जी ने एक रडियो खरीदा | "Last month, father bought a radio."
- पिछले साल, वह भारत गयी | "Last year she went to India."

Activity 3

Please write 5 Hindi sentences explaining what did you do yesterday in simple perfective aspect.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Use of the Present Perfective Tense

The perfective aspect in the present tense is used to express a recently completed action, the effect of which may still be continuing. Please note that the past adverbs of time cannot be used in the present perfective tense sentences.

For examples:

- आज मैं दस किलोमीटर दौड़ी हूँ | "Today, I have run 10 kilometers."
- आज मेरे पिता जी ने मुझे कुछ पैसे दिए हैं | "Today, my father has given me some money."
- आज सुबह, मैंने योगा किया है | "I have done yoga this morning."

Activity 4

Please write 5 Hindi sentences explaining what did you do today in the present perfective tense.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Use of the Past Perfective Tense

The perfective aspect in the past tense is used to express a remote past completed action, the effect of which may not be continuing at all. Please note that the past adverbs of time can be used in the past perfective tense sentences.

For examples:

- कल मैं दस किलोमीटर दौड़ी थी | "Yesterday, I had run 10 kilometers."
- पिछले महीने, मेरे पिता जी ने मुझे कुछ पैसे दिए थे | "Last month, my father had given me some money."
- बचपन में, मैंने योगा किया था | "In childhood, I had done yoga."

Activity 5

Please write 5 Hindi sentences explaining what did you do when you were a child (during your childhood) in the past perfective tense.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Use of the Future Perfective Tense

In English, the future perfective tense is used to show a completed action by a particular time in future. In Hindi we simply use Simple future tense to express those actions.

In Hindi, the perfective aspect in the future tense is used to express assumption that some action must have been completed by a particular time.

For examples:

- अब तक बच्चे सो गए होंगे | "Children must have fallen asleep by now."
- पिता जी १० बजे तक कार्यालय पहुँच गए होंगे | "Father must have reached the office by 10 o'clock."
- माँ ने शाम तक खाना पका लिया होगा | "Mother must have cooked the food by the evening."

Activity 6

Please write 5 Hindi sentences assuming what your friends must have done by now using the future perfective tense.

- 1.
- 2.
- 3.
- 4.
- 5.

Activity 7

Please read the following paragraphs and click on the verbs which are in the perfective aspect.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1363>

Activity 8

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1363>

Activity 9

Please read the following sentences carefully and decide if the sentences are grammatical or ungrammatical.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1363>

धन्यवाद !

8.8: Grammar- कर Construction

कर Construction Video

Instructor Video: कर Construction

In Hindi, कर is used to combine two or more actions which happen subsequently, and subject is the same of all these sentences. When we combine two or more verbs by using कर the aspect markers on the verbs is replaced by कर and only the last verb keeps its aspect and agreement markers. When multiple sentences are combined by using कर construction, the subject should be used just once.

For example:

- मैं सुबह उठती हूँ।
- मैं कॉफी पीती हूँ।
- मैं स्कूल जाती हूँ।
- कर construction: मैं सुबह उठकर कॉफी पीकर स्कूल जाती हूँ।
- वह स्कूल जाती है।
- वह हिन्दी पढ़ती है।
- वह खाना खाती है।
- कर construction: वह स्कूल जाकर हिन्दी पढ़कर खाना खाती है।

कर with करना Conjunct Verb

When कर comes with करना 'to do' verb the it changes in के.

For example:

- मैं काम करता हूँ।
- मैं कमरा साफ़ करता हूँ।
- मैं आराम करता हूँ।
- कर construction: मैं काम करके कमरा साफ़ करके आराम करता हूँ।

कर in Perfective Aspect

In perfective sentences, the use of -ने with subject depends on the last verb which comes with its perfective aspect and agreement markers.

For example:

- मैं उठा।
- मैंने कॉफी पी।
- मैं स्कूल गया।
- कर construction: मैं उठकर कॉफी पीकर स्कूल गया।
- मैं उठा।
- मैं स्कूल गया।
- मैंने कॉफी पी।
- कर construction: मैंने उठकर स्कूल जाकर कॉफी पी।

Activity 1

Please combine the following sentences by using कर construction:

गीता काम करती है ।	+	गीता आराम करती है ।	=	
तुम खाना खाओगी ।	+	तुम घर जाओगी ।	=	
तुम दौड़े ।	+	तुमने पानी पिया ।	=	
राकेश ने खाना खाया ।	+	राकेश सोया ।	=	
पीटर ने गाड़ी चलायी ।	+	पीटर घर आया ।	=	
उसने खाना पकाया ।	+	वह खाना खा रहा है ।	=	
हम हिन्दी पढ़ेंगे ।	+	हम भारत जायेंगे ।	=	
उसने टी. वी. देखा ।	+	वह सोने गया ।	=	
तुम यहाँ आओगी।	+	तुम क्या करोगी ?	=	
वह नहाया ।	+	उसने नाश्ता किया ।	=	

Activity 2

Please separate these sentences which are combined by using कर construction.

मैंने सुबह उठ कर मुहँ धोया ।	१. २.	
मैं पानी पीकर दौड़ने गयी ।	१. २.	
मैंने घर आकर नाश्ता किया ।	१. २.	
मैं स्कूल जाकर दोस्तों से मिलकर क्लास में गयी ।	१. २. ३.	
मैंने क्लास करके खाना खाया ।	१. २.	
मैंने घर आकर आराम किया ।	१. २.	

मैंने रोटी पकायी और खाना खाया ।	१. २.	
मैंने खाना खाकर टी. वी. देखा ।	१. २.	
मैं टी. वी. देखकर सोने लगी ।	१. २.	
मैं कल सुबह उठकर फिर से यही करूँगी ।	१. २.	

धन्यवाद !

8.9: Conjunct Verb

Conjunct Verb with करना Video

Lecture: Conjunct Verb

In English, one can use a noun or an adjective like a verb. To use a noun or adjective as a verb in Hindi, one can combine verbs such as करना and होना with them. These combinations cannot be used to create a verb which already exists. However, Hindi does not always have a single verb equivalent to English verbs: such as *to close* (बंद करना).

	Adjectival conjunct verb	Nominal conjunct verb
Forms	Adjective + करना	Noun + करना
Properties	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Conjunct verbs with करना act like a transitive verb and hence the subject must appear with the <i>-ne</i> (-ने) marker when the conjunct verb comes in the perfective tense (or express a completed action). Conjunct verb with करना focuses on the doer of an action. Negative sentence: To form a negative conjunct verb, the word नहीं should be placed between the noun/ adjective and the verb करना, in a standard word order. Agreement system: In a conjunct verb, the noun/adjective part of the conjunct verb remains unchanged and the verb करना agrees with the potential subject/object in the sentence. Based on the agreement, the verb करना changes its form. 	

Examples of Adjectival Conjunct Verbs

- मैंने अपना कमरा साफ़ किया। "I cleaned my room."
- तुम अपना घर गंदा करते हो। "You make your house dirty."
- वे कार्यक्रम की तैयारी कर रहे हैं। "They are preparing for the program."

Examples of Nominal Conjunct Verbs

Nominal conjunct verbs can be further divided into two categories:

(a) one that requires a connector such as *kaa/kii*.

Examples of nouns that require connectors:

- हमने उसकी मदद की। "We helped him/her."
- राहुल ने गाड़ी की मरम्मत की। "Rahul fixed the car."
- छात्र हिन्दी का अभ्यास कर रहे हैं। "Students are practicing Hindi."
- राहुल ने घर की सफ़ाई की। "Rahul cleaned a house."

(b) one that does not require any connector.

Examples of nouns that do not require connectors:

- राम ने मुझे क्षमा किया। "Rahul forgave me."
- बच्चे शोर कर रहे हैं। "Children are making noise."

- मैंने अपनी माँ को फ़ोन किया। "I called my mother."

Conjunct Verb with होना

Conjunct verbs with होना are intransitive verbs and hence the subject must not appear with the -ne (-ने) marker when the conjunct verb comes in the perfective tense (or expresses a completed action). All the conjunct verbs with करना also have a construction with होना in which the doer of the action is usually not expressed.

Adjective + होना

Examples of adjectival conjunct verbs

- मेरा कमरा साफ़ हुआ। "My room got cleaned."
- उसका कमरा गंदा हुआ। "His house became dirty."
- कार्यक्रम की तैयारी हो रही है। "Preparation for the program is taking place."

Noun + होना

Like करना conjunct verb, Nominal conjunct verbs with होना can also be further divided into two categories

(a) one that requires connector such as kaa/kii.

Examples of nouns that require connectors:

- उसकी मदद हुई। "His/her help happened (literally)./ S/he was helped."
- गाड़ी की मरम्मत हुई। "The fixing of the car happened (literally)./ The car was fixed."
- हिन्दी का अभ्यास हो रहा है। "Practice of Hindi is happening (literally)./Urdu is being practiced."

(b) one that does not require any connector.

Examples of nouns that do not require connectors:

- यहाँ शोर हो रहा है। "It is noisy here."
- कार्यक्रम खत्म हो गया। "The program ended."
- भूल हो गयी। "The mistake happened."

Activity 1

Please write two sentences with each of the following conjunct verbs.

फ़ैसला करना "To decide"	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1.• 2.
साफ़ करना "To clean"	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• 1.• 2.

वापस करना "To return"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
खत्म करना "To finish"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
कम करना "To reduce"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
ठीक करना "To fix up"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
तैयार करना "To prepare"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
शुरू करना "To start"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
मरम्मत करना "To repair"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x की मदद करना "To help X"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x का इंतज़ार करना "To wait for X"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x की कोशिश करना "To try X"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.
x का अभ्यास करना "To practice X"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1. • 2.

Activity 2

Please write a response of these following personalized questions and then record yourself.

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1367>

धन्यवाद !

8.10: Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mood

Instructor Video: [Subjunctive](#)

Subjunctive verb forms are generally used to convey desirability, possibility, probability, uncertainty or a wish about some future action or event.

Structure

If we delete the suffix – गा, गे or गी from the future verb forms then the subjunctive verb form is remaining.

Future	Subjunctive
मैं खाऊँगी। “I will eat.”	मैं खाऊँ? “Perhaps, I may eat?”
हम पढ़ेंगे। “We will study.”	हम पढ़ें? “Perhaps we may study?”
शायद वह बाज़ार जाएगा। “Perhaps he will go to the market.”	शायद वह बाज़ार जाए। “Perhaps he may go to the market.”

Notes:

- The subjunctive form of a verb remains the same regardless of whether it refers to a masculine or a feminine subject.
- Three verbs that are irregular forms in future (लेना *to take*, देना *to give* and होना *to be*) are also have irregular in the subjunctive case.

Pronouns	Future			Subjunctive		
	होना	लेना	देना	होना	लेना	देना
मैं	होऊँगा	लूँगा	दूँगा	होऊँ	लूँ	दूँ
हम	होंगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें
तू	होगा	लेगा	देगा	हो	ले	दे
तुम	होगे	लोगे	दोगे	हो	लो	दो
आप	होंगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें
यह	होगा	लेगा	देगा	हो	ले	दे
वह	होगा	लेगा	देगा	हो	ले	दे
ये	होंगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें
वे	होंगे	लेंगे	देंगे	हों	लें	दें

For examples:

- Future:** शायद वह कल दिल्ली जाएगा / जाएगी। “Perhaps he / she will go to Delhi tomorrow.”
- Subjunctive:** शायद वह कल दिल्ली जाए। “He / She may go to Delhi tomorrow.”
- Future:** अगले साल भी मैं हिन्दी पढ़ूँगी। “I will study Hindi next year too.”
- Subjunctive:** शायद अगले साल भी मैं हिन्दी पढ़ूँगी। “Perhaps I may study Hindi next year.”

Negation of Subjunctive

The negative particle used with the subjunctive is always न.

- शायद वह कल दिल्ली न जाए। "Perhaps S/he may not go to Delhi tomorrow."
- शायद आज वर्षा न हो। "Perhaps it may not rain today."

Subjunctive Case in Imperfective and Perfective Aspects

In order to use subjunctive case in imperfective and perfective aspect, a subjunctive form of होना is added as an auxiliary to the habitual, Progressive, or perfective forms of the main verb.

Simple Subjunctive

- शायद हम दिल्ली जायें। "Perhaps we may go to Delhi."
- शायद बच्चे क्रिकेट खेलें। "Perhaps children may play cricket."

Subjunctive Habitual

- शायद वह जयपुर में हिन्दी पढ़ता हो। "Perhaps he learns/ used to learn Hindi in Jaipur."
- शायद वह सारी रात पढ़ाई करती हो। "Perhaps, she studies whole night."

Subjunctive Progressive

- शायद हम दिल्ली जा रहे हों। "Perhaps we may be going to Delhi."
- शायद मेरे दोस्त अभी कोई फ़िल्म देख रहे हों। "Perhaps my friends may be watching some movie."

Subjunctive Perfective

- शायद उसने वहाँ काम किया हो। "Perhaps S/he may have worked there."
- शायद उसने तुम से कुछ कहा हो। "Perhaps s/he may have said something to you."

Uses of Subjunctive Case

To express desirability

- चलो आज कहीं बाहर चलें। "Let's go out somewhere today."
- चलो आज हिन्दी में बात करें। "Let's talk in Hindi today."

To express advice/permission (may, should)

- मैं अन्दर आऊँ? "May I Come in?"
- मैं घर जाऊँ? "May I go home?"

Let's Constructions

- चलिए घूमने चलें! "Let's go for a walk."
- चलिए खाना खायें! "Let's eat food."

Most polite form of request

- आप मेरे साथ आएँ। "Please come with me."
- अब खाना खाएँ। "Let's eat now."

To express probability/uncertainty

- शायद आज बारिश हो। “Perhaps, it may rain today.”
- शायद कल वह यहाँ आये। “Perhaps, s/he may come here tomorrow.”

To express wishes/blessings/curses

- जन्मदिन मुबारक हो! “Wish you a happy birthday!”
- नया साल मुबारक हो ! “Wish you a happy new year!”

Complex Sentences: Uses of Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses

Subjunctive case can be used in subordinate clause to express desire and possibility.

For examples:

मैं/ हम/ तुम/ आप/ वह/ वे चाहता/ चाहती/ चाहते/ चाहती हूँ / है / हो/ हैं कि ...

- मैं चाहती हूँ कि आप हिन्दी पढ़ें। “I want you to study Hindi.”
- माँ चाहती है कि मैं डॉक्टर बनूँ। “Mother wants me to become a doctor.”

मेरी/ तुम्हारी/ आपकी/ उसकी/ उनकी इच्छा है कि...

- मेरी माँ की इच्छा है कि मैं हिन्दुस्तान जाऊँ। “My mother wants me to go to India.”
- उसकी इच्छा है कि हम मिठाई खाएँ। “S/he wants us to eat sweets.”

More expressions

	Expressions	Examples
1	कितना अच्छा हो कि...	कितना अच्छा हो कि वह वापस आए! “It would be great if she came back!”
2	काश कि...	काश कि..... आज छुट्टी हो जाए। “If only today would be holiday.”
3	X को चाहिये कि...	तुम्हें चाहिये कि तुम गरीबों की मदद करो। “You ought to / should help the poor.”
4	यह ज़रूरी / आवश्यक है कि...	यह ज़रूरी/आवश्यक है कि हम गरीबों की मदद करें। “It is necessary for us to help the poor.”
5	मेरा खयाल/ विचार (opinion) है कि...	मेरा खयाल/ विचार (opinion) है कि आज तुम कहीं न जाओ। “I think you should not go anywhere today.”
6	यह मुमकिन/संभव (possible) है कि...	मुमकिन/संभव है कि वे लोग अगले साल पाकिस्तान जायें। “It is possible that they will go to Pakistan.”
7	यह हो सकता है कि.....	हो सकता है कि कल वह आये। “It may be that she will come tomorrow.”

Other constructions requires subjunctive with conjunctions

ताकि/ जिससे कि.....(so that)

- हिन्दी पढ़ो ताकि/ जिससे कि भारत में हिन्दी बोल सको। “Learn Hindi so that you can speak Hindi in India.”

The subjunctive of possibility is common in Conditional (if.....then construction)

- अगर तुम कहो तो मैं भी तुम्हारे साथ चूँ (गा)। “If you say then I will also come with you.”

In the sentence with जब तक.....न the subjunctive form is generally used (if the reference is to a future action)

- जब तक मैं न बुलाऊँ, (तब तक) अंदर न आना। “Don’t come in until I call you.”

The subjunctive is used in “as if/ as though” clauses that indicate supposition or imagined actions or situations, particularly after expressions such as “it seems as if / as though....” or “it appears as if / as though.”

- हमें ऐसा लगा जैसे हम वहाँ अजनबी हों। “It seemed to us / we felt as if we were strangers there.”
- वह इतनी सुंदर है मानो गुलाब हो। “She is as pretty (that you would think of her) as though she were a rose.”

Activity 1

	Please write two subjunctive sentences in Hindi that express		
(a)	desirability	1.	
		2.	
(b)	advice/permission	1.	
		2.	
(c)	Let's construction	1.	
		2.	
(d)	polite form of request	1.	
		2.	
(e)	probability/uncertainty	1.	
		2.	
(f)	Blessing/Curse/Wishes	1.	
		2.	

Activity 2

(a) Food Recipe: Please write a recipe of your favorite Indian/South Asian food. You have done this before using imperative sentences. Here you have to write the recipe using subjunctive sentences.

(b) Giving Direction: Imagine that you have invited a friend to your house for a party. Your friend does not know your the direction from her/his house to your house. Please write a direction in Hindi. [Hint: Please use subjunctive sentences].

(c) Good wishes:

An interactive or media element has been excluded from this version of the text. You can view it online here:

<https://openbooks.lib.msu.edu/ll151/?p=1369>

धन्यवाद !

INDEX

No index terms found.

GLOSSARY

S

Sample Word 1 | Sample Definition 1